How to Use This Manual

Objective Search

Using Handset Phone Number/Mail Address

Checking Handset Number

Check your phone number on the handset.

Owner Information ⇒ Page 2-11

Customizing Mail Address

Customizing handset address can help reduce spam.

Customizing Handset Address ⇒ Page 15-2

Customizing Handset

Downloading Chaku-Uta®

Download your favorite songs from the Chaku-Uta® site.

Downloading Music and Video Files ⇒ Page 8-10

Ringtone

Select a music file, movie file or Chaku-Uta® from ringtone settings.

Ringtone ⇒ Page 11-4

Understanding Basics

Basic Operations

Using keys and accessing functions.

Accessing Functions from Main Menu ⇒ Page 1-20
Handset ⇒ Page 1-6

Making Calls

Make voice/video calls.

Making a Call ⇒ Page 2-2
Making a Video Call ⇒ Page 5-2

Using Advanced Features

Using Handset as a TV

Immediately enjoy digital TV without needing to join up or pay additional fees.

Digital TV ⇒ Page 6-2

Using Handset as a Portable Music Player

Use Media Player to listen to downloaded music.

Media Player ⇒ Page 8-2

Saving Address to Handset

Saving your new address to handset is convenient for exchanging information with others.

Owner Information ⇒ Page 4-11

Sharing Address with Friends

Share your new address by sending a message to multiple addresses simultaneously.

Sending Mail ⇒ Page 15-5, Page 15-10
Adding Recipients ⇒ Page 15-6

Sharing Address via Infrared

Share your email address by infrared transfer. Save your email address to handset prior to transfer.

Infrared ⇒ Page 10-2

Standby Display

Set images captured with handset camera as wallpaper or set 3D character Ku-man to appear in Standby.

Standby Display ⇒ Page 11-6
Setting Ku-man for Standby ⇒ Page 11-10

Changing Font Size

Change menu font size.

Setting the Font Size ⇒ Page 11-9

Text Entry

Enter text when creating Phone Book entries or messages.

Text Entry ⇒ Page 3-2

Sending Different Types of Mail

Select S! Mail or SMS according to your purpose.

Creating & Sending an S! Mail ⇒ Page 15-5
Creating & Sending an SMS Message ⇒ Page 15-10

Accessing the Mobile Internet

Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai ⇒ Page 16-4

Digital Camera/Digital Video

The handset is equipped with a 3.24 megapixel camera. Enjoy taking high-resolution pictures or videos.

Taking a Picture ⇒ Page 7-9
Recording a Video ⇒ Page 7-15

Using Handset as a Gaming Device

Play preinstalled S! Appli games or download games from Yahoo! Keitai.

S! Appli ⇒ Page 17-2

Using Handset as a Wallet

Use S! FeliCa to pay when you go shopping. A calculator has been included for your convenience.

S! FeliCa⇒Page 21-2
Calculator ⇒ Page 13-10

Feature Search

912T Features

One Seg TV

The 912T supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones and information terminals. You can also browse data broadcast and record programs.

➡Page 6-2

Bluetooth®

Music can be enjoyed wirelessly using Bluetooth® communication.

➡Page 8-6, Page 10-5

SoftBank Features

Yahoo! Keitai Sites

A special SoftBank handset ID is available to enhance your Internet browsing experience.

➡Page 16-4

Arrange Mail/Feeling Mail

Send Arrange Mail (HTML mail) or Feeling Mail.

➡Page 15-7, Page 15-8

Convenient Features

Phone Book/S! Address Book

Save contact information to Phone Book and backup data on S! Address Book Server.

➡Page 4-2, Page 4-13

Alarm/Event Schedule

Use the alarm to wake you in the morning. Save and manage event schedule on the calendar that can be interfaced with phone/mail functions.

➡Page 13-6, Page 13-12

PC-related Features

PC Website Browser

The 912T can display websites intended for PCs, allowing you to view information just as you would with a PC.

➡Page 16-5

Document Viewer

Microsoft® Office Word, Excel and PDF files are all viewable with the 912T. This is especially useful for business people.

➡Page 9-9

3.24 Megapixel Camera

The 912T is equipped with a 3.24 megapixel camera that takes extremely high-quality photos and video.

➡Page 7-3

MicroSD Memory Card

The 912T supports compact high-capacity microSD memory cards. This makes exchanging files with a PC quick and easy.

➡Page 9-17

Electronic Books

The electronic book viewer allows browsing of electronic books and handset manuals.

➡Page 20-5

S! Town/S! Loop/S! Cast

These SoftBank-only communication services exchange information according to your needs.

➡Page 18-2, Page 20-2

Hot Status/Circle Talk

These two functions boost communication. Use Hot Status to automatically share your current mood/availability and Circle Talk to talk to a group of people.

➡Page 18-3, Page 18-12

S! GPS Navi

Use the GPS function to check your position on a map. This function can also guide you to your destination.

➡Page 19-2

Barcode Reader

Access a variety of information by reading the increasingly popular QR codes.

➡Page 7-17

Voice Recorder

Record sounds using the 912T. Use a microSD memory card to record for an extended period. This is especially useful for meetings and interviews.

➡Page 13-25

Optional Services

A complete line of services, including Call Forward and Voice Mail meet your phone needs.

➡Page 14-2

Card Reader Mode

for use with PC

Use the enclosed USB Cable to connect handset to a PC and access microSD card from the PC.

➡Page 10-13

Transferring Music

for use with PC

Use the music software BeatJam 2007 for 912T to transfer music stored on a PC to your handset. The handset can now be used as a portable music player.

➡Page 10-14
➡BeatJam 2007 for 912T Guide Book

Contents

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 912T handset.

- To ensure proper usage, read this manual thoroughly before using the SoftBank 912T handset.
- After reading this manual, retain it for later reference.
- If this manual is lost or damaged, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- Accessible services may be limited because of contract conditions.

SoftBank 912T handset is compatible with the 3G system.

Caution

- Unauthorized copying of any part of this manual is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this manual. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

What's in the Box

- Handset
- Battery Pack (TSBAV1)
- Battery Cover
- AC Charger (TSCS01)
- USB Cable (TSDAC1)
- User Guide
- First Step Guide (Japanese only)
- BeatJam 2007 for 912T Guide Book (Japanese only)
- Utility Software for 912T (CD-ROM)*[1]*[2]
- Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (TSLAU2)

*[1] Complimentary sample not available for purchase.
*[2] Upgrades or updates of included utility software may become available on the SoftBank Website (www.softbank.jp) without prior notification. Please check for the newest versions of utility applications and download as required.

- For information about optional items, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- MicroSD memory card is not included in the 912T package. Purchase a microSD memory card to use memory card functions. In this manual, microSD memory card is referred to as “memory card”.

About This Manual

Please note, the 912T is referred to as "handset" in this manual.

Symbols

" ▶ " navigates you to the next menu.
"→" navigates you to the next action/item.
■ is used to confirm your selection.
Some operations are not fully explained in this manual.

Screenshots and Keys

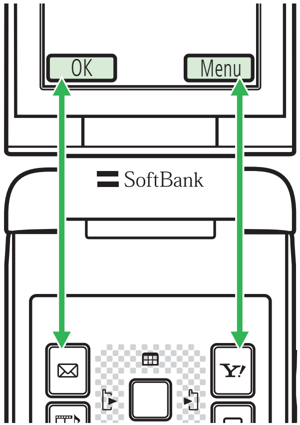
The screenshots and keys appearing in this manual are simplified to facilitate explanation, and so they may differ from the handset's actual screenshots and keys.

Display Position

This manual mainly explains about handset operations while in the Clamshell Open position (page 1-13).

Soft Keys

Use Soft Keys to perform operations indicated at the bottom of the Display.



- Press to select OK.
- Press to access Option menu.

Tip

- Soft Key operations vary by the current function.
- In this manual, Soft Key operations are described as below.
  → (Menu)

Navigation Key

The following notations are used to indicate Navigation Key operations.

Notation/Operation	Function
Press up	Opens Active Window* Increases volume Moves cursor up
Press down	Accesses Phone Book* Decreases volume Moves cursor down
Press left	Accesses Dialed* Moves cursor left
Press right	Accesses Received* Moves cursor right
Press center	Accesses Main menu Confirms the selected item or performs the selected operation Acts as the camera shutter-release

* Functions accessible from Standby can be changed by modifying the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12).

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper usage, be sure to read the Safety Precautions thoroughly before using your handset. Always keep this manual available for future reference.
- Be sure to follow the safety information contained in the instruction manuals and indicated on the product to prevent injury to the user and other persons, as well as damage to property.
- When a child uses the handset, it is recommended that a parent or guardian reads the instruction manuals thoroughly and provides proper instructions to the child.
- The following describes the meaning of safety symbols and signal words. Be sure to understand their meanings before proceeding to read this manual.

Pictographs

Pictograph	Meaning
Danger	Indicates an imminently hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury[1] of the user.
Warning	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in death or serious injury[1] of the user.
Caution	Indicates a potentially hazardous operation that could result in minor or moderate injury[2] to the user or damage to property[3].

1 Serious injury includes loss of sight, wounds, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (burns causing reddish areas, blistering and other damage to the skin as a result of heat exceeding the body temperature contacting your skin for a prolonged time), electric shock, fractures and poisoning requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

2 Injury includes wounds, burns and electric shock not requiring hospitalization or long-term medical treatment.

3 Damage to property includes extensive damage to homes and household property, as well as livestock and pets.

Symbols

Symbol	Meaning
Prohibited	indicates a prohibited action. The prohibited action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.
Compulsory	indicates a compulsory action that must be carried out. The compulsory action is indicated graphically or described in text in or near the symbol.

Limitation of Liability

- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from natural disasters such as earthquakes, lightning, storms and floods, as well as fires through no fault of SoftBank and Toshiba, acts by third parties, other accidents, improper use by the user, whether intentionally or negligently, or use under other abnormal conditions.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for incidental damages arising out of the use or inability to use the product, including, but not limited to, corruption or loss of data, lost business revenue or suspension of business operations.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from improper use not conforming to the instructions in the instruction manuals.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from malfunctions caused by use in combination with connection equipment or software that is not authorized for use by SoftBank and Toshiba.
- Image data recorded with the camera, downloaded data and other data may be corrupted or lost due to malfunction, repair or other improper handling of the product. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the restoration of corrupted or lost data, as well as any damages or lost revenue and profits.
- SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for corruption or loss of stored data resulting from failures or malfunctions of the product, regardless of the cause. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.

⚠ Danger

No disassembly

Do not disassemble, modify or repair the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock, injury or malfunction. Modification of the handset is prohibited by Japanese Radio Law. For repair, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 22-38).

No flames

Do not dispose of the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset in a fire or expose it to heat

If the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset is exposed to water, do not dry it artificially in heating equipment (microwave oven, etc.)

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

No flames

Do not charge, use or leave the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset in hot places such as near a fire or heater

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

⚠ Danger

Keep water away

Do not expose the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset to fluids such as water, perspiration or seawater
Do not leave the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset outdoors, in a bathroom or wherever water or any other fluid is used
Do not place the handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset near cups, vases or other containers of fluids

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire, electric shock or malfunction. If the handset is dropped accidentally in water or any other fluid, immediately turn off the handset and remove the battery pack. If the handset, battery pack or charger is exposed to fluids such as water during charging, remove the power plug from the outlet immediately. Do not charge the battery pack while it is wet or damp. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 22-38).

Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting the battery pack into the handset or connecting the handset to the charger
Do not connect any cords with reverse polarity

Doing so may cause the battery pack to leak, rupture, overheat or catch fire, as well as cause electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not touch the battery pack terminal (metal parts) with any metal objects (necklace, hairpin, etc.)

Doing so may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire, as well as the metal object to overheat.

Prohibited

Do not charge, overheat, disassemble or short the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset or put it into a fire

Doing so may cause ignition, rupturing, malfunction or fire.

Compulsory

Do not use a battery pack other than one supplied with or designated for the handset
Do not use the battery pack for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

Do not use a charger other than one supplied with or designated for the handset to charge the battery pack
Do not use the charger for any other handset

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

If electrolyte fluid leaking from the battery pack or the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset comes into contact with your skin or clothes, wash it immediately with clean water as this may hurt your body
And if it gets into your eyes, do not rub them, and have them immediately treated by an ophthalmologist after washing them with clean water
If the fluid sticks to the equipment, wipe it out without touching it directly

If the fluid is left as it is, your skin may get irritated or there may be fear of losing your sight.

⚠ Warning

Prohibited

Do not use the handset while driving
Do not make or receive a call and do not use other functions (messaging, game, camera, TV, video, music, Mobile Light, etc.)

Doing so may cause a traffic accident. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

Compulsory

Be sure to turn off your SoftBank handset before entering places such as gas stations where flammable gases may be produced
Also do not charge the handset in those places

The gases may be ignited.
Be sure to turn off the handset before using S! FeliCa-compatible reader/writer within gas stations, etc. (When the IC Card Lock is set, turn off the handset after unlocking the setting.)

Prohibited

Do not swing the handset by its strap, TV rod antenna, USB cable, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Earphone-Microphone

Doing so may cause an injury, accident or damage.

Compulsory

Turn off the handset while you are near any precision electronic equipment

Radio waves may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment. Examples of such equipment: medical electronic equipment such as cardiac pacemakers and hearing aids or fire alarms and automatic doors. If you use medical electronic equipment, consult with the equipment manufacturer or distributor about the influence of radio waves.

Unplug power cable

Remove the power plug from the outlet if the AC Charger is not to be used for a long period of time or before cleaning

Failing to do so may cause an electric shock, fire or malfunction.

Compulsory

Turn off the handset wherever its use is prohibited such as on an aircraft

Failing to do so may adversely affect the operation of electronic equipment and cause an accident.
Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Compulsory

Check your surroundings to confirm that it is safe to make/receive calls, send/receive messages, take pictures, record videos or watch TV

Failing to do so may cause you to trip over or cause a traffic accident.

⚠ Warning

Compulsory **Do not use the handset with any power voltage other than the specified voltage**

Doing so may cause a fire. The power voltages are 100 to 240 V AC for the AC Charger and 12 or 24 V DC (for a negative ground car only) for the In-Car Charger.

Compulsory **Wipe away any dust on the plug of the AC Charger with a dry cloth after removing the plug from the outlet**

Dust on the plug or outlet may cause a fire.

Compulsory **Follow the instructions below when installing and wiring in-vehicle devices**

- **Make sure that devices do not interfere with driving and safety equipment such as airbags**
- **Make sure that wires are not caught in seatbelt buckles, doors or other moving parts**

Any wire caught around a foot, brake pedal, accelerator pedal, etc. may interfere with driving and cause a traffic accident. If any part of an in-vehicle device drops onto the floor, it may startle you into abrupt braking or steering, leading to a traffic accident.

Compulsory **When thunder is heard outside, stop using the handset immediately**
Turn off the handset and do not touch it

Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock. When thunder is heard, stop using the handset and move to a safe place such as inside a building.

Compulsory **If the battery pack fails to charge in the specified time, stop charging immediately**

Failing to do so may cause overheating, rupturing or fire. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 22-38).

Compulsory **When inserting the AC Charger plug into an AC household outlet, make sure that a metal strap or any other metal object does not touch the plug**

Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit or fire.

⚠ Warning

Compulsory

If something unusual happens to the handset, battery pack or charger; for example, it emits smoke or an unusual odor or is damaged, perform the following steps immediately

1. If the battery pack is charging, unplug the AC Charger from the AC household outlet or unplug the In-Car Charger from the cigarette lighter socket.
2. Make sure that the handset is not hot, then turn it off and remove the battery pack.

Failing to do so and continuing use (charging) may cause the battery pack to overheat, rupture or catch fire or the handset to overheat. If something unusual happens, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank Customer Assistance (page 22-38).

Prohibited

Do not drop the handset or battery pack or subject it to excessive shock

Doing so may cause overheating, rupturing, fire or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not sit down with the handset in your trousers pocket

Excess weight may damage the Display, battery pack or other parts resulting in overheating, fire or injury.

Compulsory

If the handset is used near an implanted cardiac pacemaker, defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, radio waves may interfere with such a device or equipment

Observe the following guidelines

1. If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator, carry and use the handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted device.
2. Turn off the handset in crowded places such as packed trains because a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator may be nearby. Radio waves can interfere with the operation of a cardiac pacemaker or other medical device.
3. Follow the precautions below in medical institutions.
   - Do not bring the handset into an operating room, intensive care unit or coronary care unit.
   - Turn off the handset in a hospital ward.
   - Turn off the handset in a lobby or other location close to medical equipment.
   - Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use the handset in or bring it into prohibited areas.

⚠ Warning

4. When using electronic medical devices other than an implanted cardiac pacemaker or defibrillator outside of medical institutions (such as at home), consult with the individual medical device manufacturer about the possible influence of radio waves.

The above information conforms to "The Guidelines on Use of Mobile Phones and Other Devices to Prevent Electromagnetic Wave Interference with Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan), as well as refers to "The Investigative Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment" (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

Prohibited

Do not use the AC Charger with any power supply other than a 100 to 240 V AC household power supply

Doing so may result in a fire, as well as cause the charger to overheat, catch fire or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not insert the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset with wrong polarity [(+) & (-)]

Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.

Prohibited

Do not use the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset after the "Recommended Use-by Date" displayed on the battery expired, or do not leave the used-up dry cell battery as being inserted

Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.

Prohibited

Keep the dry cell battery of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset out of the reach of small children

If it is mistakenly swallowed, consult a doctor as soon as possible because this may cause suffocation or injury to stomach etc.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited

Do not use or leave the handset or battery pack in places where it will be exposed to direct sunlight or in hot places such as inside a car in the sun

Doing so may cause overheating, fire or malfunction.

Prohibited

Keep the handset, battery pack and charger away from infants and small children

Failing to do so may result in the battery pack or memory card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.

Prohibited

Make sure that the charger terminals (metal parts) do not come into contact with wires or other metal objects

Failing to do so may cause overheating or burns.

Prohibited

Do not pull the cord when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger from an AC household outlet or socket

Damage to the cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire. Hold the plug when unplugging the AC Charger or In-Car Charger.

Prohibited

Do not pull, bend with excessive force or twist the cords of the AC Charger and In-Car Charger

Do not damage or modify them

Do not place objects on them

Do not apply heat and keep them away from heaters

Damage to a cord may cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

No wet hands

Do not plug or unplug the AC Charger with wet hands

Doing so may cause electric shock or malfunction.

Prohibited

Keep magnetic cards away from the handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing the handset

Failing to do so may cause the magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.

Prohibited

Do not use the handset in a vehicle if it affects in-vehicle electronic devices

Use of the handset in some types of vehicles may, in some rare cases, affect in-vehicle electronic devices and interfere with safe driving.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited
Do not place the handset on an unstable or unlevel surface
Doing so may result in the handset falling and causing injury or malfunction. Be particularly careful when vibration is set.

Prohibited
Do not dispose of the used battery pack with ordinary garbage
Insulate the terminal with tape and then dispose of the used battery pack separately from ordinary garbage or take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop. Be sure to observe local regulations on the separate collection of used batteries, wherever applicable.

Prohibited
Do not touch the handset with sweaty hands or place it into a pocket of sweaty clothes
Sweat and humidity may erode the internal components of the handset and cause overheating or malfunction.

Prohibited
Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running
Doing so may result in a flat battery.

Prohibited
Do not use any other dry cell batteries than the AAA battery for Bluetooth® Stereo Headset
Doing so may cause the malfunction of the equipment as well as cause the dry cell battery to leak.

Compulsory
If the fuse for the In-Car Charger blows, replace it with a designated fuse
Replacing the fuse with other than a designated fuse may cause overheating and fire.
For details on replacing the fuse, refer to the instruction manual of the In-Car Charger.

Compulsory
Use the handset in well-lighted places and with an appropriate distance between your eyes and its screen when you watch TV
Failing to do so may cause decreased vision.

Compulsory
Do not leave the TV rod antenna extended except when using TV
Talking on the handset without retracting the TV rod antenna may cause injury.

Compulsory
Be careful not to trap your fingers or objects when closing the handset and not to trap your fingers in the hinge when opening the handset
Failing to do so may cause injury or damage to the LCD Display.

Prohibited
Do not remove the polyester film from Main Display and External Display
Using the handset without the polyester film to protect against shattering of the reinforced glass may result in an injury if Main Display or External Display is damaged.

⚠ Caution

If your skin becomes irritated, immediately stop using the handset and consult with a dermatologist

Compulsory

The following materials and surface treatments have been used for the handset. Some of these materials may cause itching, irritation, eczema, etc. in some rare cases depending on the individual's constitution and physical condition.

Part	Material (Surface Treatment)
Outer housing (Main Display side)	Magnesium alloy (Acrylic baking coating)
Outer housing (External Display side)	Stainless steel (Acrylic melamine electrodeposition coating)
Outer housing (Keypad side, Battery Cover side, hinge cover portion, screw cover below Main Display, screw covers on Battery Cover side)	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)*
Main Display Panel, External Display Panel	Tempered glass with polyester film (UV cured acrylic processing)
Screw cover above Main Display Panel	PET film
Keypad Panel	Urethane UV cured resin
Side Keys	PC resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Clearance retainer	Urethane UV cured resin
Camera Panel	Acrylic resin (UV cured acrylic coating)
Mobile Light Panel	PET film
External Light	Elastomer resin, PC resin
Corner caps	Elastomer resin, PC/ABS resin
Charging Indicator	Acrylic resin
Infrared Port	Acrylic resin
Memory Card Slot Cap	Elastomer resin (UV cured acrylic processing)
External Device Port Cap	Elastomer resin (UV cured acrylic processing)
Charging Terminal	Stainless steel (gold plating, nickel undercoat)
Screws	Steel (nickel coating)
TV Antenna (top part)	PC/ABS resin
TV Antenna (pullout part, top side)	PA resin
TV Antenna (pullout part, base side)	Elastomer resin
TV Antenna (sleeve side)	Cadmium-less brass
TV Antenna (hinge part)	Stainless steel

* Tin undercoat for Keypad side (Silver model) and the hinge cover portion (Silver and Green models)

⚠ Caution

Compulsory **Before using the handset, make sure that no metal objects (such as pins) are stuck to the Earpiece or Stereo Speakers**

Failing to do so may result in a metal object causing an ear or hand injury, etc.

Compulsory **If you have a weak heart, be careful with the call vibration and ringtone volume settings**

Failing to do so may startle you and may be harmful to your heart.

Prohibited **Do not use the Mobile Light for purposes other than taking pictures, recording videos or lighting**

Doing so may harm the eyes and cause impaired vision or other injury.

Prohibited **Make sure things like paper, cloth and bedding are not placed on the handset during a video call or while charging using a USB connection, In-Car Charger, AC Charger, etc.**

Failing to do so may cause overheating, fire, burns or malfunction.

Compulsory **Do not turn the volume up too high while using Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset**
Do not use Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset continuously for long periods of time

Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing defect regardless of the volume level.
Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly resulting in an accident.

Prohibited **Do not insert objects other than the memory card into the Memory Card Slot**

Doing so may cause overheating, electric shock or malfunction.
Cover the slot with the cap at times other than when you are inserting or removing the memory card.

Prohibited **Keep your face away from the Memory Card Slot when inserting or removing the memory card**
Keep the memory card out of the reach of small children

If the memory card is let go of suddenly, it may fly out and hit your face resulting in injury.

⚠ Caution

Prohibited

Do not subject the memory card to vibration or shock or remove it from the slot or turn off the handset while data is being written to or read from the memory card

Doing so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Prohibited

Use only the memory card supported by the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

The handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of June, 2007).

Prohibited

Do not let children use cables such as USB cable, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable, Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset unsupervised and keep cables out of infant's reach

An injury may be caused if, for instance, the cable is wrapped around a neck.

Prohibited

Do not point the infrared beam at anyone's eye during infrared communication

Doing so may cause eye damage.

Prohibited

Do not use the Mobile Light close to eyes

Doing so may cause eye damage. Be especially careful not to take pictures or record videos with the Mobile Light too close to the eyes of infants.

Prohibited

Do not use excessive force when inserting or removing the USIM card

Doing so may cause a malfunction. Be careful not to injure a hand or finger when removing the card.

Prohibited

Use only a USIM card designated for the handset

Failing to do so may cause data loss or malfunction.

Prohibited

Do not bend the TV rod antenna with excessive force

Doing so may result in damage or distortion of the TV rod antenna and cause injury.

General Notes

Using Your Handset

- The handset employs radio waves. Signals may be disrupted even within service areas if you are indoors, underground, inside a tunnel or inside a vehicle. If you move to a location with poor signal reception, a call or the TV image/sound may be suddenly cut off.
- When using the handset in public places, take care not to annoy other people around you. Use of the handset is prohibited in some public places such as in theaters or on buses and trains.
- The handset is a radio transceiver under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit the handset for inspection based on this law.
- Use of the handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the image and sound quality of the equipment.
- The handset employs a digital system to maintain a high level of communication quality even at very low signal levels. However, calls may be suddenly cut off when the signal strength becomes too weak.
- The digital system provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of someone eavesdropping on your conversation cannot be ruled out as long as radio waves are used.
- The handset is exclusively for use in Japan. It cannot be used outside Japan.
- Data stored on the handset may be corrupted or lost on the following occasions.
  - The handset is used improperly.
  - The handset is exposed to static electricity or electric noise.
  - The handset is turned off during operation.
  - The battery pack is completely discharged.
  - The handset malfunctions or is sent for repairs.

  SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for the corruption or loss of stored data. Be sure to keep a separate memo of important data to limit damage caused by data corruption or loss to a minimum.
- Be sure to charge the battery pack before using the handset for the first time or if the handset has not been used for a long time. When the battery pack is stored for a long time, it discharges over time even if it is not used.
- Before using a memory card, read the instruction manual of the memory card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- When the handset is used for extended periods of time, especially in high temperature conditions, the handset surface could become hot. Please use caution when touching the handset under such conditions.
- When certain items are taken out of the country, documentation may be required to certify that the export of the items is not controlled, prohibited, or restricted by the Export Trade Control Order and Foreign Exchange Order. Basically, no such documentation is required if you take the handset out of the country and bring it back for the purpose of personal use when going on vacations or short business trips. In some cases, however, an export permit may be required if the handset is to be used by or transferred to anyone else.

  Furthermore, a US government export permit may be required when taking the handset to countries for which the US government has imposed export restrictions (Cuba, Libya, North Korea, Iran, Sudan, Syria).

  For details on export laws, regulations and procedures, refer to the Web page of the Security Export Control Policy Division of the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry.
- If you use a hearing aid, handset usage may interfere with hearing aid performance. If there is any interference, consult with the manufacturer or distributor of the hearing aid.

Inside Vehicles

- Do not use the handset while driving. Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law.
- Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking or stopping is permitted.

Aboard Aircraft

- Do not use the handset on an aircraft. Do not turn the handset back on while you are on the aircraft. Use of the handset on an aircraft is prohibited by law.

Handling Basics

- Do not use the handset in extreme temperatures, direct sunlight and humid or dusty places.
- Do not drop the handset or subject it to excessive shock.
- To clean the handset, wipe it with a dry soft cloth. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or other solvents. Doing so may cause discoloration and remove the printed logo.
- Avoid exposing the handset to rain, snow or high humidity. The handset, battery pack, charger, Earphone-Microphone, Bluetooth® Stereo Headset and other optional accessories are not waterproof.
- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on to avoid malfunction.
- If the battery pack has been removed from the handset or the handset has not been charged for a long time, stored data and settings may be lost or altered. SoftBank and Toshiba accept no liability whatsoever for any damage or loss resulting from such negligence.
- The battery pack is a consumable item employing lithium ions. Replace the battery pack with a new one if the operation time becomes extremely short after it is fully charged. Buy a new battery pack designated for the handset.
- Do not dispose battery pack with municipal waste. Insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery pack in a plastic bag and take to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

Li-ion

- Be sure to use the PULL tab when removing the battery pack. Removing the battery pack in any other way may damage the terminals.
- Some handset display pixels may be missing or remain lit. This is not a defect or malfunction. If the Display is left on for a long period of time, pictures may be permanently burned into it.
- Make sure Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Earphone-Microphone is securely plugged into Earphone Microphone Jack. Failing to do so may generate noise on the other party's phone during calls.
- Do not turn the volume up too high while using Earphone-Microphone or Bluetooth® Stereo Headset. Exposure to high sound levels may impair hearing and prolonged use may cause hearing damage regardless of the volume level. Sound leakage may annoy other people and surrounding sounds may not be heard clearly when walking, resulting in an accident.
- When Earphone Microphone Jack and External Device Port are not in use, make sure to replace the caps. Otherwise dust or water may enter the handset causing handset malfunction.
- Hold the plug and do not pull the cord when unplugging Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or Earphone-Microphone. Pulling the cord may cause damage or malfunction.

- The communication antenna of the handset is built into the body and does not protrude. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal antenna (page 1-7). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body. Doing so may prevent you from making/receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- When you replace the handset or send it for repair, messages and other data stored in the handset cannot be transferred to another handset.
- Do not drop the USIM card or subject it to excessive shock. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place a heavy object on it. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not allow the USIM card to get wet or leave it in places of high humidity. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Do not use or leave the USIM card in hot places such as near a fire or heater. Doing so may cause a malfunction.
- Avoid storing the USIM card in direct sunlight or hot and humid places. Failing to do so may cause a malfunction.
- Keep the USIM card out of infants' reach. Failing to do so may result in the USIM card being accidentally swallowed or cause an injury.
- Before using the USIM card, read the instruction manual of the USIM card thoroughly to ensure safe and proper operation.
- Do not put the handset into the bag or pocket without retracting the TV rod antenna. Doing so may apply excessive force on the TV rod antenna and result in damage.

Functional Limitations

- After handset upgrade or subscription cancellation, the following functions become unavailable on handset:
  - Camera
  - Digital TV
  - Media Player
  - S! Appli
- Above functions may become unavailable after long periods of handset disuse. Contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Mobile Camera

- Be sure to observe proper etiquette when using the camera.
- Do not expose the camera lens to direct sunlight. Concentrated sunlight through the lens may cause the handset to malfunction.
- Be sure to try taking and previewing pictures before using the camera on important occasions like wedding ceremonies.
- Do not commercially use or transfer pictures taken with the camera without the permission of the copyright holder (photographer), except for personal use.
- Do not use the camera in locations where taking photos and recording videos are prohibited.

Mobile Light

- Do not use the Mobile Light in hot, cold or humid places. Doing so may shorten its life.
- The Mobile Light has a limited life. Repeated use will decrease the light intensity.

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Making copies (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copies for purposes other than stated above without proper authorization constitutes an infringement of copyrights and moral rights, potentially resulting in claims for reparations or criminal punishment. If you use the handset to make copies, observe the copyright laws. Furthermore, recording materials using the camera is also subject to the same laws.

Right of Portrait

Portrait right is the right of an individual to refuse to be photographed by others and protects from the unauthorized publication or use of an individual's photograph by others. Right of personality is a portrait right applicable to all citizens and right of publicity is a portrait right (property right) designed to protect celebrities' interests. Be careful when taking pictures with the handset camera. Photographing, publicizing and distributing photographs of citizens and celebrities without permission are illegal.

TOSHIBA CORPORATION

IMPORTANT NOTE: PLEASE READ BEFORE USING YOUR HANDSET

BY ATTEMPTING TO USE ANY SOFTWARE ON THE SUPPLIED HANDSET THIS CONSTITUTES YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF THESE EULA TERMS. IF YOU REJECT OR DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL THE TERMS OF THIS EULA, PLEASE DO NOT ATTEMPT TO ACCESS OR USE THE SUPPLIED SOFTWARE.

End User License Agreement

This End User License Agreement ("EULA") is a legal agreement between you (as the user) and TOSHIBA CORPORATION ("Toshiba") with regard to the copyrighted software as installed in a Toshiba 3G handset supplied to you (the "Handset").
Use or disposal of any software installed in the Handset and related documentations (the "Software") will constitute your acceptance of these terms, unless separate terms are provided by the Software supplier on the Handset, in which case certain additional or different terms may apply. If you do not agree with the terms of this EULA, do not use or dispose the Software.

1. License Grant. Toshiba grants to you a personal, non-transferable and non-exclusive right to use the Software as set out in this EULA. Modifying, adapting, translating, renting, copying, making available, transferring or assigning all or part of the Software, or any rights granted hereunder, to any other persons and removing any proprietary notices, labels or marks from the Software is strictly prohibited, except as expressly permitted in this EULA. Furthermore, you hereby agree not to create derivative works based on the Software.
2. Copyright. The Software is licensed, not sold. You acknowledge that no title to the intellectual property in the Software is or will be transferred to you. You further acknowledge that title and full ownership rights to the Software will remain the exclusive property of Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates, and/or their suppliers, and you will not acquire any rights to the Software, except as expressly set out in this EULA. You may keep a back-up copy of the Software only so far as necessary for its lawful use. All copies of the Software must contain the same proprietary notices as contained in or on the Software and are subject to the terms of this EULA. All rights not expressly granted under this EULA are reserved to Toshiba, Toshiba's affiliates and/or their suppliers.
3. Reverse Engineering. You agree that you will not attempt, and if you are a business organization, you will use your best efforts to prevent your employees, servants and contractors from attempting to reverse engineer, decompile, modify, translate or disassemble the Software in whole or in part except to the extent that such actions cannot be excluded by mandatory applicable law and only if those actions are taken in accordance with such applicable law. Any failure to comply with the above or any other terms and conditions contained herein will result in the automatic termination of this license and the reversion of the rights granted hereunder to Toshiba.
4. **DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY.** The Software is provided "AS IS" without warranty of any kind. **TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES, AND THEIR SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS OR OTHER TERMS (WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED), INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES, CONDITIONS AND TERMS OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE**

AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS; AND THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE IS WITH YOU. YOU ACCEPT THAT SOFTWARE MAY NOT MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS AND NO WARRANTY CAN BE GIVEN THAT OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE.

5. **LIMITATION OF LIABILITY. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT LEGALLY PERMITTED, IN NO EVENT SHALL TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY DAMAGES FOR (A) LOST BUSINESS OR REVENUE, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS DATA; OR (B) CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR INDIRECT DAMAGES OF ANY KIND (WHETHER UNDER CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) ARISING OUT OF: (I) THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TOSHIBA, TOSHIBA'S AFFILIATES OR THEIR SUPPLIER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES; OR (II) ANY CLAIM BY A THIRD PARTY. SAVE AS SET OUT IN THIS SECTION, TOSHIBA'S ENTIRE LIABILITY UNDER THIS EULA SHALL NOT EXCEED THE PRICE PAID FOR THE SOFTWARE, IF ANY.**

   PLEASE MAKE AND RETAIN A COPY OF ALL DATA YOU HAVE INSERTED INTO YOUR PRODUCT, FOR EXAMPLE NAMES, ADDRESSES, PHONE NUMBERS, PICTURES, RINGTONES ETC, BEFORE SUBMITTING YOUR PRODUCT FOR A WARRANTY SERVICE, AS SUCH DATA MAY BE DELETED OR ERASED AS PART OF THE REPAIR OR SERVICE PROCESS.

6. Laws. This EULA will be governed by the laws of Japan. All disputes arising out of this EULA shall be subject to the exclusive jurisdiction of the Tokyo District Court.
7. Export Laws. Any use, duplication or disposal of the Software involves products and/or technical data that may be controlled under the export laws of applicable countries or region and may be subject to the approval of the applicable governmental authorities prior to export. Any export, directly or indirectly, in contravention of the export laws of applicable countries or region is prohibited.
8. Third Party Beneficiary. You agree that certain suppliers of the Software to Toshiba have a right as a third party beneficiary to enforce the terms of this EULA against you as a user.

Trademarks and Patents

Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations :

4,901,307	5,504,773	5,109,390
5,535,239	5,267,262	5,600,754
5,416,797	5,778,338	5,490,165
5,101,501	5,511,073	5,267,261
5,568,483	5,414,796	5,659,569
5,056,109	5,506,865	5,228,054
5,544,196	5,337,338	5,657,420
5,710,784		

Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

microSD Logo is a trademark.

Powered by Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ Mascot Capsule® is a registered trademark of HI Corporation © 2002-2003 HI Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

The Bluetooth word mark and logo are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by TOSHIBA is under license.

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG-LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

T9 Text Input is covered by Japan Pat.No. 特許 3532780,3492981 and other patents pending.

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.

QR Code is a registered trademark of Denso wave Incorporated.

FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a trademark of Sony Corporation.

is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.

Edy is a brand name of the prepaid-type electronic money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Sha-mail, Sky Mail, Arrange Mail, S! Mail, S! Appli, S! GPS Navi, S! CAST, S! Address Book, Hot Status, Circle Talk, PC Site Browser, Movie Sha-mail, Navi appli, Live Monitor, S! Town, S! Loop, Feeling Mail and Location Navi are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.

BookSurfing is a registered trademark of CELSYS, Inc., Voyager Japan, Inc. and INFOCITY, Inc.

"SOFTBANK" SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.

This product contains NetFront Browser, NetFront Messaging Client, NetFront IMS Client, NetFront DTV Profile Wireless Edition and NetFront Document Viewer of ACCESS CO.,LTD.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.
Adobe, the Adobe logo and Reader are trademarks or registered trademark of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U. S. and other countries.

Patents Pending.
ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.

This product uses OKAO™ Vision of OMRON Corporation.
"OKAO" and "OKAO Vision" are registered trademarks of OMRON Corporation in Japan.

Yahoo! and the Yahoo!/Y! logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.

Microsoft, PowerPoint, and Windows are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

All other company names and trademarks are the property of their respective owners.

SAR

This 912T mobile phone complies with the technical standards for the absorption of radio frequency (RF) energy as set by the Japanese government. These technical standards, based upon scientific evidence, were established to ensure that RF energy from wireless mobile devices used next to the head do not have a serious effect on human health. The maximum Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), which measures the average radio wave energy absorbed by the human head, set by the Japanese government is 2 W/kg*. This allowed value includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value corresponds with the international guidelines prescribed by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) in cooperation with the World Health Organization (WHO).
All models of cellular phones are required to comply with the technical standards of Japan set forth in the Radio Law before being released for sale. The 912T has received construction design certification under the Radio Law with a SAR value of 0.115 W/kg. This maximum SAR value was determined by TÜV Rheinland Japan, Ltd. (registered certification agency) and the Telecom Engineering Center (measurement agency) at the maximum transmission power of this handset with measurement carried out conforming to the guidelines set by the Japanese government. Depending on the product, there may be minute differences in the SAR. However, they are within the allowed limits. During calling, the actual SAR is lower as the phone is designed to use the minimum transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network.

Additional information about SAR can be found at the website listed below.

Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications website:
http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/j/ele/index.htm
Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB) website:
http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html
SoftBank website:
http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/corporate/legal/emf/emf03.html
Toshiba Mobile Phone website:
http://www.toshiba.co.jp/product/etsg/cmt/

* The technical guidelines are stipulated in the Ministerial Ordinance Related to the Radio Law (Wireless Equipment Regulations, Article 14-2).

About SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

* Body SAR: Refers to the SAR of the maximum transmission power when continuously calling with the handset attached to the body and using an earphone.

** Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Measured value of continuous calling at 6 minute intervals.
Our technical standards for body SAR include the U.S. Federal Communications Commission (FCC) standards and information from Europe. For more information see the sections on "FCC RF Exposure Information" and "European RF Exposure Information."

*** Placement on the body: Measurements were taken with the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the normal position of the handset. In order to maintain compliance with radio frequency (RF) exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

FCC RF Exposure Information

The guidelines established by the FCC are based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The standards include a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit set by the FCC is 1.6 W/kg.

The tests are performed according to FCC standards for each model and the maximum SAR value for this model handset, when tested next to the body as described in this user guide, is 0.997 W/kg.

Placement on the body: Measurements for the 912T were taken with the normal position as the rear of the phone facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm. In order to maintain compliance with FCC RF exposure requirements, use accessories that maintain a 1.5 cm separation distance between the body and the back of the handset. Choose accessories, such as belt clips and holsters, that do not contain metallic components.

The use of accessories that do not satisfy these requirements may not comply with FCC RF exposure requirements, and should be avoided. Additional information on Specific Absorption Rates (SAR) can be found on the homepage listed below:

Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) website:

http://www.phonefacts.net

European RF Exposure Information

Your mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed not to exceed limits recommended by international guidelines for exposure to radio waves. These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include safety margins designed to assure the protection of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The exposure standard for wireless handsets employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg and the highest SAR value for this device when positioned near the body is 0.619 W/kg*.

As SAR is measured utilizing the device's highest transmitting power the actual SAR of this device during operation is typically below that indicated above. This is because the handset was designed to use the minimum level of transmission power necessary to communicate with the mobile network. The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information does not indicate the need for any special precautions for the use of mobile devices. They note that if you want to reduce your exposure then you can do so by limiting the length of calls or using a "hands-free" device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body. Additional information about SAR can be found at the WHO homepage listed below.

http://www.who.int/emf

* These tests for wearing the mobile device on the body are carried out in accordance with FCC standards and the values are based on European requirements.

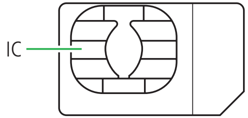
1 Getting Started

USIM Card

The USIM card is an IC card that stores customer information such as your phone number. Insert USIM card in USIM card compatible SoftBank handsets only.

Getting Started

- If the USIM card is not inserted, the handset cannot be used.
- Save Phone Book entries and SMS messages on USIM card (pages 4-13, 15-15).
- Insert into compatible SoftBank handsets to access files.
- Do not insert USIM cards into any other IC card device. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Keep the USIM card IC chip clean.
- Use a dry, soft cloth to clean the USIM card.
- Do not attach labels to USIM cards. Malfunction may result.
- For details on the USIM card, refer to the instruction manual provided with the USIM card.



Important

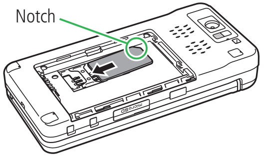
- USIM cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM cards to SoftBank upon subscription termination.
- Returned USIM cards are recycled.
- USIM card specifications may change without prior notice. Preinstalled S! Appli may become unavailable if a different USIM card is inserted.
- Backup USIM card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.
- If your USIM card or handset (with USIM card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend your service immediately. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Inserting & Removing the USIM Card

- Before inserting or removing the USIM card, turn off the handset and remove the battery pack.

Inserting

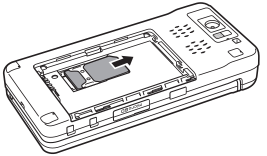
1 With IC Chip (page 1-3) facing down, slide USIM card in direction as shown



2 Push USIM card completely until it stops

Removing

1 Slide out USIM card



Note

- Avoid touching or scratching the USIM card's IC.
- Do not force the USIM card into or out of the handset; damage may result.
- Take care not to lose the USIM card after removing it from the handset.

Tip

- Some Chaku-Uta®/Chaku-Uta Full®, melody, movie, S! Appli, Lifestyle-Appli or book files in your handset or memory card may be inaccessible after repairing or replacing the handset, terminating the subscription, or replacing the USIM card. Preinstalled S! Appli, S! Town and BookSurfing applications may become unavailable if a different USIM card is inserted.

USIM PINs

For security, the USIM card has two security codes: PIN and PIN2. Do not forget these codes and do not reveal them to others.

PIN

This is a four to eight digit security code to prevent others from using your handset. When ***PIN Settings*** (page 12-2) is set to ***ON***, PIN is required each time the handset is turned on. The default setting is "9999". PIN can be changed (page 12-2).

PIN2

This is the four to eight digit security code required for operations such as resetting Call Time&Cost and setting Fixed Dial #. The default setting is "9999". PIN2 can be changed (page 12-2).

PIN Lock & PUK Codes

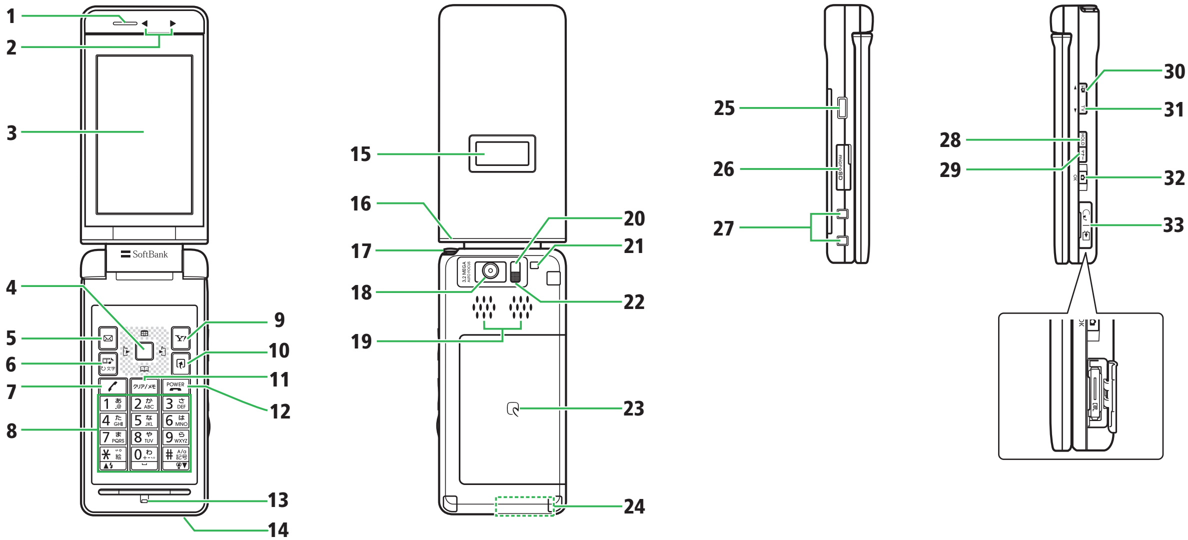
PIN lock is set when an incorrect PIN or PIN2 is entered three times consecutively. PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) codes are required to cancel PIN lock/PIN2 lock. To obtain PUK/PUK2, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Note

- If PUK/PUK2 is incorrectly entered ten consecutive times, USIM card is locked. USIM card lock cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

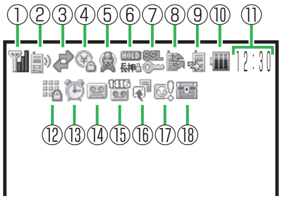
Handset Parts & Functions

Handset



1. **Earpiece**
2. **TouchSwitch** ◀/▶: Touch-sensitive keys for use in Viewer Position. Use to adjust settings in TV, camera or PC Browser.
3. **Main Display**
4. **Navigation Key**: Move cursor up, down, left or right, access functions assigned to the Navigation Key (page 11-12), etc.
   Center Key: Access the Main menu from Standby. Use this key to confirm selected items and perform selected operations.
5. **Left Soft Key**: Access the Messaging menu from Standby.
6. **Media Player Key**: Access Media Player (Audio menu) from Standby or use to make/answer video calls.
7. **Send Key**: Make and answer calls.
8. **Keypad**: Enter phone numbers, characters, etc.
   ***/ϟKey**: Enter *, pictographs, emoticons, etc. Turn on/off Mobile Light when using the camera.
   #/ Key: Enter #, symbols, or switch between uppercase/lowercase, etc.
   To set or cancel Manner Mode, press and hold from Standby (page 2-11).
9. **Right Soft Key**: Access Yahoo! Keitai from Standby.
10. **Shortcut Key**: Access the Shortcuts menu (page 13-34).
11. **Clear/Memo Key**: Delete characters and return to the previous operation.
12. **End/Power Key**: Power handset on/off, end calls/operations and return to Standby.
13. **Microphone**
14. **Charging Indicator**: Lights during charging and goes out when charging is complete.
15. **External Display**: Notifies of incoming calls, received messages and other information while your handset is closed.
16. **External Light**: Flashes for incoming calls, messages, etc.
17. **TV Antenna**: Extend for TV reception.
18. **Camera**: Used for taking pictures and recording videos.
19. **Stereo Speakers**
20. **Camera/Video Indicator**: Flashes when the camera or video is activated.
21. **Handstrap Hole**
22. **Mobile Light**: Used as flash when taking pictures or recording videos. Also used as torch (penlight) (page 11-12).
23. **Logo**: S! FeliCa contactless IC Card embedded. Place the logo near a reader/writer.
24. **Internal Antenna**: The antenna is built into your handset.
25. **Infrared Port**: Use for infrared transmissions (page 10-2).
26. **Memory Card Slot**
27. **Charger Terminal**
28. **HOLD Key**: Press and hold while handset is closed to lock/unlock Side Keys (page 12-6).
29. **Manner Key**: Used to set or cancel Manner Mode.
30. **Circle Talk Key (Up)**: Access Circle Talk Members List (page 18-13). Press and hold to send a Simple Notice of your location (page 13-37), turn the torch (penlight) on, display My Status (page 18-7), or check the balance of e-money charged in Lifestyle-Appli (page 21-9). The key function can be changed (page 11-12).
31. **TV Key (Down)**: Press and hold from Standby to watch TV (page 6-5).
32. **Camera Key**: Activate the camera, etc. This key also acts as the shutter button during camera use.
33. **Earphone Microphone Jack**: Connect Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and Earphone-Microphone (optional).
    External Device Port: Connect AC Charger and other devices.

Main Display Indicators



① **Signal Strength**
Strong Moderate Weak Faint
Out of Range
Offline Mode On (page 2-12)

② **/ Voice/Video Call**
Dial-up Connection
Positioning

③ **Packet Transmission**
Displaying Picture File with Location Information
My Status Online (page 18-8)
Packet Transmission Ready
Packet Network Range
3G Network Unavailable

④ **IC Card Lock Active** (page 21-5)

⑤ **New S! Cast** (page 20-2)
Reception of Rights Object
Indicates the reception of a content key (page 15-4) during operation.
Message Box Full
Message Delivery Failed
New S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)
Delivery Report
New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report

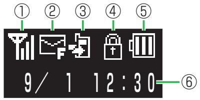
⑥ **TV Lock Active** (page 6-7)
PC Website Connected (page 16-5)
New Live Monitor Info (pages 13-4, 16-17)
Memory Card Inserted (page 9-17)

⑦ **Web SSL**
Indicates a connection to an information page with security protection (page 16-3).
/ Bluetooth® Connection Established/Connection Standby (page 10-7)
Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T Device Supported)
Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost
Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost
Infrared Communication (page 10-3)
USB Connection (page 10-14)
Card Reader Mode (page 10-14)

⑧ **Updating Software** (page 22-13)
External Connection for Data Synchronization
TV Recording in Progress (page 6-9)
/ S! Appli Activated/Paused (page 17-3)
Music File Playing (page 8-3)
Music File Playback Paused
Video File Playing (page 8-3)
Streaming (page 8-10)
⑨ **Missed Call(s)** (page 2-8)
Manner Mode (Silent) (page 11-2)
Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 11-2)
Manner Mode (Drive) (page 11-2)
// Original Manner Mode (page 11-2)
⑩ **Battery Level**
Sufficiently Charged | Very Low
Low | Charge Immediately
Charging (page 1-16)
⑪ **Time**
⑫ **Keypad Lock Active** (page 12-6)
Password Lock Active (page 12-3)
⑬ **Alarm Set** (page 13-6)
⑭ **Answering Machine On (No Messages)** (pages 2-5, 13-8)
//// Answering Machine On (Message(s) Recorded) (pages 2-5, 13-8)
//// Answering Machine Off (Message(s) Recorded) (pages 2-5, 13-8)

⑮ **Missed Call(s) (Message(s) Recorded at Voice Mail Center)** (page 14-5)
Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice Call) (page 14-3)
Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Video Call) (page 14-3)
Call Forwarding (Ringer Off for Voice and Video Calls) (page 14-3)
⑯ **Information Prompt Redisplay** (page 1-12)
⑰ **Hot Status Notice (Invitation)** (page 18-3)
⑱ **Secret Mode On** (page 12-5)

External Display Indicators



① **Signal Strength**

Strong Moderate Weak Faint

Out of Range

Offline Mode On (page 2-12)

② **Message Box Full**

Message Delivery Failed

New S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)

Delivery Report

New S! Mail/SMS and Delivery Report

/ **Bluetooth® Connection Established/Connection Standby** (page 10-7)

Bluetooth® Connection Established (SCMS-T Device Supported)

Some Bluetooth® Connections Lost

Bluetooth® Connection(s) Lost

③ **Missed Call(s)** (page 2-8)

Missed Call(s) (Message(s) Recorded at Voice Mail Center) (page 14-5)

Unchecked Message(s) on Answering Machine (pages 2-5, 13-8)

Manner Mode (Silent) (page 11-2)

Manner Mode (Alarms) (page 11-2)

Manner Mode (Drive) (page 11-2)

1/2/3 **Original Manner Mode** (page 11-2)

④ **Hold Active** (page 12-6)

Keypad Lock Active (page 12-6)

Password Lock Active (page 12-3)

IC Card Lock Active (page 21-5)

Music Player Cannot be Started

⑤ **Battery Level**

Sufficiently Charged Very Low

Low Charge Immediately

Charging (page 1-16)

⑥ **Time**

Information Prompt

Information Prompt appears to inform you of missed calls, new messages and other information.

1 When Information Prompt appears, scroll to an item and press ■

The following items are available.



Information Prompt Items

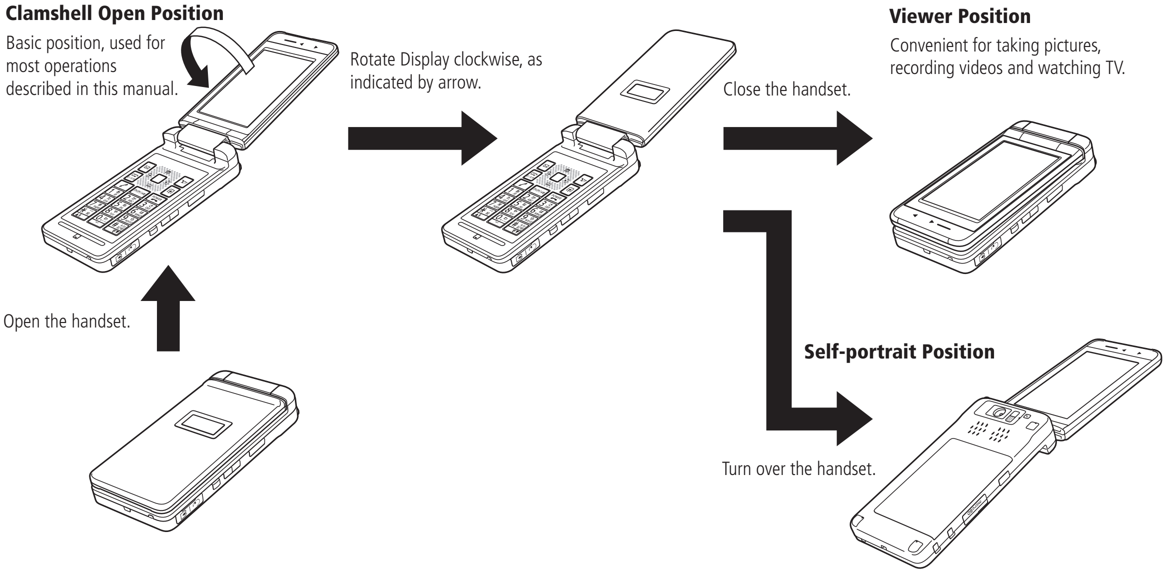
- **Stop Snooze**: Cancel snooze (page 13-8)
- **Missed Calls**: Missed calls (page 2-8)
- **Missed Calls**: New Voice Mail message(s) at Voice Mail Center (page 14-5)
- **Ans Machine**: New message(s) recorded (page 2-5)
- **New Messages**: Unread S! Mail/SMS (page 15-3)
- **Unsent Messages**: Unsent S! Mail/SMS
- **Partly Sent**: Unsent S! Mail for some recipients
- **Delivered**: Unread delivery report(s) (page 15-17)
- **Missed CT**: Missed Circle Talk calls (page 2-8)
- **Notification**: New Hot Status notification (page 18-3)
- **New S! Cast**: Content update(s) available (page 20-2)
- **S! Cast Info**: S! Cast update failed (page 20-3)
- **Weather Updated**: Weather report update available (page 20-4)
- **Update Failed**: Live Monitor update failed (page 13-4)
- **Software Update**: Software updated (page 22-13)
- **Content Key Memory Full (Keys Full)**: Content key cannot be saved any more
- **Resume S! Appli**: S! Appli paused
- **IC Card Request**: Request from Reader/Writer

Tip

- To close Information Prompt, press POWER. To redisplay Information Prompt, press and hold ↵.
- If the number of unchecked items exceeds 100, ">100" appears instead of the number of unchecked items.
- When ***New S! Cast***, ***S! Cast Info***, ***Update Failed*** and ***IC Card Request*** prompts appear, access is available to only the most recent item.

Display Positions

The following Display positions are available.

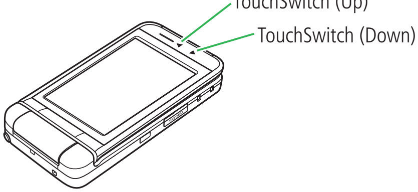


Note

- When rotating Display, hold top portion of Display and do not force it in the wrong direction. Doing so may damage your handset.
- Do not carry your handset in Viewer Position. Doing so may damage Main Display.
- Do not close handset when Display is partially rotated. Doing so may damage the Navigation Key, etc.

TouchSwitch

Use TouchSwitch keys ◀/▶ when TV (page 6-5), camera (page 7-6) or PC Browser (page 16-3) is activated in Viewer Position (page 1-13).



Note

- When TouchSwitch keys are available, backlight illuminates regardless of Keypad Light setting (page 11-11).
- Do not use TouchSwitch keys in bathrooms or wherever it may be subject to high humidity or water exposure. Never use the keys with wet hands.
- Moisture may cause TouchSwitch keys to malfunction. Do not use the keys when wet/moist or with wet/sweaty fingers. Wait until the keys are completely dry or wipe moisture off before use.
- After prolonged contact (over 20 seconds), contact recognition is lost. Remove finger and do not touch the keys for one second or longer.
- Do not affix stickers or anything preventing direct contact with the keys.
- TouchSwitch keys may not respond when contact is made with a fingernail or other materials such as cloth, leather or paper.

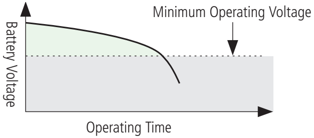
Battery & Charger

Getting Started

Before using your handset for the first time, charge the battery.

Battery Pack

- The battery pack of your handset uses a lithium ion battery. It has a tendency to gradually lose its voltage with the operating time as shown in the figure below.



- Extreme temperatures will reduce battery capacity and shorten the operating time. Do not use the battery pack in high temperatures. This may shorten battery life.
- Charging at low temperatures does not produce the best results. Make sure you charge the battery pack at temperatures of 5 to 35 degrees.
- When storing the battery pack separately, make sure you put it in a case, etc. and store it in a dry and cool place. This will avoid short-circuiting the battery pack terminal. It is recommended that you store it uncharged.
- Repeated charging and discharging of a battery shortens the operating time.

- When disposing of a used battery pack, insulate the terminal with tape or place the battery pack into a plastic bag and then take it to your nearest SoftBank Shop, a recycle shop or follow the local disposal regulations for environmental conservation.
- Do not bend the USIM card or place heavy objects on it.

Battery Drain

- The battery pack discharges little by little when stored for a long time even if it is not used. It self-discharges at a rate of 10 to 20% per month and about 50% per half a year.
- If the handset is used in a location with poor signal reception or left in Standby outside the service area, or if you use the mobile light or launch S! Appli, it will shorten the battery's operating time.

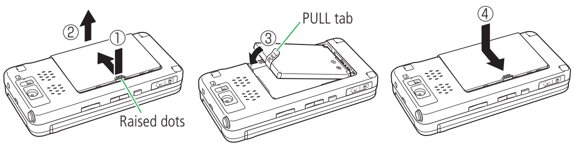
Battery Level

- The battery level on the display (page 1-9) changes with the operating time. Charge or replace it when the level is low. When the battery is about to run out " ", a message appears and the battery alarm tone sounds. The handset shuts down after 30 seconds.

Charging

- The battery pack must be inside handset to charge it. Use a specified AC Charger, desktop cradle (optional) and In-Car Charger (optional).
- Clean the charger terminals, battery pack terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab: Contact failure may occur.
- If the message ***Please check connection with your charger*** appears, clean the charger terminals, battery pack terminal and External Device Port with a dry cotton swab, etc, and try again.
  When the message still does not disappear, stop charging immediately, and take the battery pack to your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- Do not charge the battery pack in humid places.
- Charging is possible while your handset is turned on, but takes longer than while your handset is turned off.
- When charging while your handset is turned on, " " appears on the display and turns to " " when charging is complete.
- The handset and charger may warm during charging. However, if it overheats, stop using immediately. There may be some defect.
- If a call arrives while the handset is being charged, it sounds the ringtone, vibrates, or flashes the external light in the same way as usual.

Inserting & Removing the Battery Pack



1 **Press down the raised dots and slide the battery cover (①)**

2 **Lift up the battery cover (②)**

3 **Align battery pack terminal with handset terminal and insert battery pack (③)**

- Make sure the PULL tab is facing up.
- When removing the battery pack, lift the PULL tab.

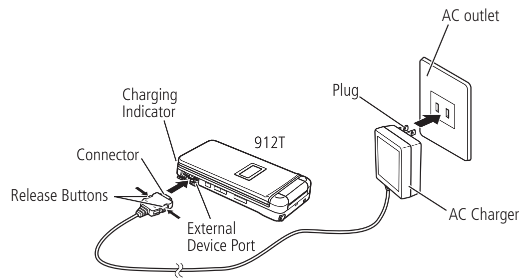
4 **Slide battery cover until it clicks shut (④)**

Note

- Do not remove the battery pack while handset power is on.
- Always remove battery pack by the PULL tab. Terminals may be damaged.

Charging with the AC Charger

Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.



1 **Connect the AC Charger connector to Handset**

- Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face down.

2 **Insert the plug into an AC outlet**

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

3 **After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the AC outlet**

4 **Remove the connector from Handset**

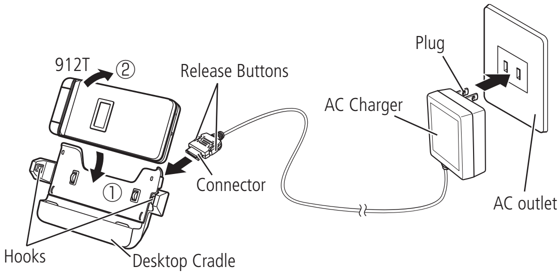
- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the AC Charger connector from Handset.

Note

- AC Charger supports a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.

Charging with the Desktop Cradle (Optional)

Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.



1 **Attach the AC Charger connector to Desktop Cradle**

● Inscription on the AC Charger connector should face up.

2 **Insert the AC Charger plug into an AC outlet**

3 **Slide handset into Desktop Cradle (①) until hooks lock handset into place (②)**

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

4 **After Charging Indicator goes out, pull the top of Handset forward and remove it from Desktop Cradle**

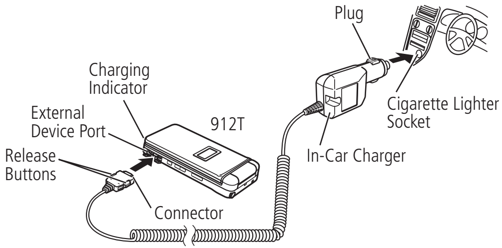
5 **Remove the AC Charger plug from the AC outlet**

Note

- AC Charger and Desktop Cradle support a power supply of 100 to 240 V AC.
- AC Charger is exclusively for use in Japan.

Charging with the In-Car Charger (Optional)

Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.



1 Connect the In-Car Charger connector to Handset

- Inscription on the In-Car Charger connector should face down.

2 Insert the plug into the cigarette lighter socket in a car

Charging Indicator lights red and charging begins.

3 After Charging Indicator goes out, remove the plug from the cigarette lighter socket

4 Remove the connector from Handset

- Press and hold Release Buttons to remove the In-Car Charger connector from Handset.

Note

- Do not use the In-Car Charger when the car engine is not running. Doing so may drain the battery.
- If you move away from the car, unplug the In-Car Charger. In a car where the cigarette lighter socket works even after removing the car key (the Charging Indicator illuminates even after removing the car key), leaving the In-Car Charger plugged in may drain the battery.
- Use of the handset while driving is prohibited by law. Before using the handset, stop the vehicle in a safe area where parking is permitted.

Turning Handset Power On/Off

Turning Handset Power On

1 Press and hold [POWER] until startup screen appears

Power-on screen (page 11-8) appears and the display goes to Standby.

Tip

- After turning handset power on:
  - A power-on tone sounds (page 11-5).
  - Charging Indicator illuminates.
  - Camera/Video Indicator illuminates.
  - The External Light flashes.
- If ***PIN Settings*** (page 12-2) is set to ***ON***, enter your PIN.
- The following windows appear the first time you turn on the power of your handset or after performing ***Reset All*** or ***Reset Setting*** (page 12-7).
  - Date&Time Settings (page 1-20)
  - Retrieving Network Information (right) (appears when you press [●], [✉] or [Y!] in Standby)

Turning Handset Power Off

1 Press and hold [POWER]

Power-off screen (page 11-8) appears and handset powers off.

Tip

- Before your handset turns off, it does the following.
  - The power-off tone sounds (page 11-5).
  - The External Light flashes.
- If handset is not used for long periods of time (powered off or out of range), some features may become unavailable. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Retrieving Network Information

Before using network-related services (Yahoo! Keitai, Messaging or S! Appli), retrieve network connection information.
The first time you press [●], [✉] or [Y!], a prompt appears.

1 In Standby, press [●], [✉] or [Y!]

2 Select *YES*→[●]

Handset connects to the network and Network Information is retrieved.

Note

- If Network Information is not acquired, some features will be limited.
- After you replace the USIM Card, make sure you retrieve network information.

Tip

- You can also retrieve network information from the Main menu (page 11-16).

Date & Time

1 In Standby, press ■→*Settings*→■

2 Select *Phone Settings*→■→*Clock*→■

3 Select *Date&Time*→■→Enter the year, month, date and time→■

- To set the date and time, enter the last two digits of the year and the month, the day, the hour, and the minute in two digits respectively. Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- While entering the date and time, you can move the cursor by pressing ◆. You can also increase or decrease the numbers selected by the cursor by pressing ◆.
- The day of the week is set automatically.

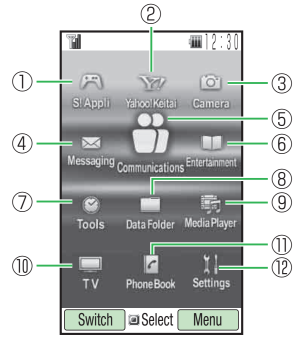
Tip

You can:

- Enter a date from 2000/01/02 to 2099/12/30.
- Switch the clock to 12-hour system (page 11-9).
- Change the clock display format (page 11-7).
- Set DST (Daylight Saving Time) (page 13-27).

Accessing Functions from Main Menu

To access the Main menu, press ■ in Standby. Use ◆ to select a menu icon and press ■ to access that menu.



Main Menu

①**S! Appli**

Access applications such as games (Chapter 17).

②**Yahoo! Keitai**

Access Yahoo! Keitai menu and download pictures, melodies and applications. Use PC Browser for Internet access to the Web (Chapter 16).

③**Camera**

Take pictures and record videos (Chapter 7).

④**Messaging**

Create S! Mail/SMS messages. Also check received and sent S! Mail/SMS messages (Chapter 15).

⑤**Communications**

You can communicate with other users or enjoy shopping (Chapter 18).

⑥**Entertainment**

Access S! Cast functions, launch BookSurfing and visit Ku-man's Room (Chapter 20).

⑦**Tools**

Access preinstalled accessories (Chapters 13, 19, 21, 22).

⑧**Data Folder**

Save/access files here (Chapter 9).

⑨**Media Player**

Play audio and video files (Chapter 8).

⑩**TV**

Watch and record Digital TV broadcasts (Chapter 6).

⑪**Phone Book**

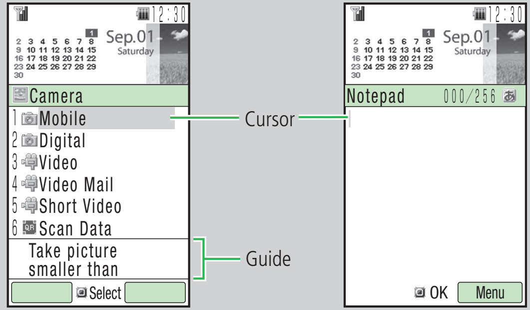
Save and access Phone Book information (Chapter 4).

⑫**Settings**

Modify and confirm handset settings (Chapters 11, 12).

Tip

- About the items shown after you select an item in the Main menu, the icons and the order of appearance are partly different in Icon View and in Tab View (page 1-22).
- You can view the default settings of each item in Default Settings (page 22-2).
- Items selected by the cursor are displayed in the guide display of the menu.



Main Menu View

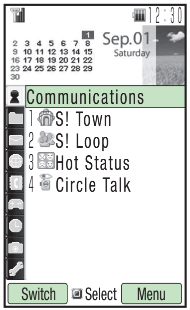
Change Main menu view from Icon View (default) to Tab View. In Tab View, sub menus appear when a tab is selected.

1 In Standby, press ■→✉ (Switch)

● To return to Icon View, press ✉ (Switch).

2 Select an item

Sub menu items appear to the right. To select an item, press □■ or ■ and scroll to the item.



Tab View

Tip

- From the Tab View, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following: ***Change Order*** (right) / ***Gamendeco*** (page 11-7) / ***Reset Setting***

Customizing Main Menu

Customize Main Menu design (icons, font color, cursor color, etc.).

1 In Standby, press ■

Changing Icon Order

Press Y! (Menu)→***Change Order***→■→Select an item→■→Select a position→■

● To restore to default order, select ***Reset Order***.

Changing Icons and Wallpaper

Press Y! (Menu)→***Set Images***→■→***Original/Options/Phone Memory***→■

● ***Original*** - Default theme.

● ***Phone Memory*** - Select a theme from Data Folder.

● ***Options*** - Customize appearance by setting a different design for each item (wallpaper, icons, font and cursor color).

Font Color

Press Y! (Menu)→***Font Color***→■→Select a color→■

Wallpaper

Press Y! (Menu)→***Wallpaper***→■→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select a wallpaper→■

* Select ***OFF*** to reset wallpaper.

Icons

Select a menu item→Y! (Menu)→***Icons***→■→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select a file→■

* Select ***OFF*** to reset icons.

Cursor Color

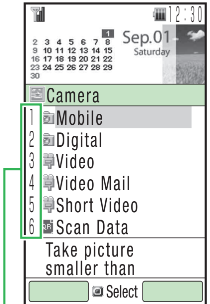
Press Y! (Menu)→***Highlight***→■→Select a color→■

Resetting

Press Y! (Menu)→***Reset Options***→■→***YES***→■

Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Enter the menu number on handset keypad (0-9, *, #) for direct access to that menu.



The number corresponding to the keypad

Mini Tool

Set Mini Tool to appear on Display (see below). Select Calendar, Notepad, animation file or other information to appear on Mini Tool.



Configuring Mini Tool Settings

When ***OFF*** is selected for the Wide View setting, Mini Tool is displayed in Standby and in the mail message input/list/browsing window.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Wide View**

1 Select the display→■

Activating/Canceling All

Press ✉ (All)→***Wide View ON***/***Wide View OFF***→■

2 Select *ON/OFF*→[■]

- If you change the ***IdleScreen*** setting, you also will need to reconfigure the wallpaper setting.

Mini Tool Information

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Mini Tool

1 Select *Mini Tool*→[■]

To Set Default Content

Select ***Preset***→[■] (twice)

To Select Content

Select ***Phone Memory***→[■]→Select item→[■] (twice)

Setting Animation

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Display ▶ Mini Tool

1 Select *Mini Photo*→[■]

2 Select *Image*→[■]

3 Select *Images List*, *Select Folder* or *Preset* →[■]

Images List

- Press [✉] (Edit)→Select an image list item→[■]→***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→[■]→Select an image→[■] (twice)→[✉] (Set) (If images are saved to Image List, skip this step).
- Select a List then press [■] and [✉] (Set).

Select Folder

Select a folder then press [■] and [✉] (Set). Images saved in the selected folder are used for the animation. If the selected folder is locked (Security Lock, page 9-16), you must enter Security Code (See following section).

Preset

Press [✉] (Set) to set the preinstalled animation.

Tip

- To select downloaded content saved in the ***Mini Photo*** folder (page 9-3), perform the following after Step 1:
  Select ***Design*** → ***Phone Memory*** → Select item → [■] (twice) → [✉] (Set)
  If you select ***Preset*** after selecting ***Design***, the same preinstalled animation will be set as in Step 3.

Codes

Your security code, center access code, call barring service code and Internet security code are required for some functions and settings.

- Write down those codes. If they are lost, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- Do not reveal your codes. SoftBank is not liable for misuse or damages.

Security Code

Security Code is a four-digit number. It is required to use various functions. Your security code can be changed (page 12-2). The default setting is "9999".

Center Access Code

Center Access Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to perform optional service operations from a fixed-line phone or to subscribe to fee-based content on the Internet.

Call Barring Service Code

Call Barring Code is a four-digit number assigned at the time of contract. It is required to set call barring. The code can be changed (page 14-9).

Internet Security Code

Internet Security Code is required to set Internet security. The code can be changed (page 12-8).

2 Basic Operations

Making a Call

- Confirm that the signal level is sufficient before making a call (page 1-8).

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press [Send]

The call is made.

- Include the area code for all numbers.
- Press [POWER] or press and hold [クリア/メモ] to delete the entire number and return to Standby. Press [クリア/メモ] to delete the last number entered.
- When the line is busy, press [POWER] to cancel and call again later.

2 Press [POWER] to end the call

Note

- Antenna is built into the handset. Signal sensitivity may be reduced if you touch or cover the portion of the body containing the internal antenna (page 1-7). In particular, do not affix things like stickers onto this portion of the body. Doing so may prevent you from making/ receiving calls, sending/receiving messages or accessing the Web.
- The TV rod antenna is only for receiving television signals. Retract the antenna when TV is not activated.
- The orientation and location of the handset may affect signal strength.
- When Cost Limit (page 2-10) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Tip

- In Standby, enter a number and press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

  Voice Call / ***Video Call*** (page 5-2) / ***Circle Talk*** (page 18-13) / ***Intl. Calls*** (page 2-3) / ***Send Message*** (pages 15-5, 15-10) / ***Pause*** (page 13-38) / ***Manual Hyphen*** (enter a "-") / ***Hide My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Show My ID*** (page 11-14)
- During calls, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

  End Call / ***Hold**** / ***Mute My Voice*** / ***Mute All*** / ***Phone Book*** (page 4-8) / ***Call Log*** / ***Voice Record*** / ***My Details*** / ***DTMF OFF***

  * Subscription to Call Waiting (page 14-6) or Multiparty Call (page 14-7) is required to use the Hold feature. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- You can receive a call while browsing the Web and receive mail during a call. This is called multiple connections.

Making International Calls

This section explains how to make an international call from Japan.

- A separate application is required for using the international call service. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38). See page 13-33 for details about the operational procedure.
- The handset does not support international roaming, so it cannot be used outside of Japan.

Adding the International Code and Country Code

1 In Standby, enter a phone number→[Y!] (Menu) →*Intl. Calls*→[●]

2 Select a country→[●]

"+" and the country code are added before the phone number.

3 Press [✓]

Tip

- An alternative way to enter the international code "+" is to press [✓] in Standby and press and hold [0]. Then enter the country code.

Caller ID

Caller ID displays the caller's phone number on the receiver's handset. Set your handset to show or hide your handset number for outgoing calls (page 11-14).

Redialing

Make calls from Dialed Number. Information such as the phone number, date and time you called is recorded for up to 20 as dialed calls.

1 In Standby, press [●▢]

Dialed numbers appear with date and time. Name appears if saved in Phone Book.

2 Select a record and press [✓]

- To make a Circle Talk call, press and hold [side key] when My Status is ***Online*** (page 18-8).

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- All the calls may not be saved to the call log depending on the circumstance.
- From Dialed Number, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Voice Call*** / ***Video Call*** (page 5-2) / ***Circle Talk*** (page 18-13) / ***Intl. Calls*** (left) / ***Send Message*** (pages 15-5, 15-10) / ***To Phone Book*** (page 4-3) / ***Add to List*** (page 11-14) / ***Delete*** / ***Hide My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Show My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Call Log Lock*** (page 2-9)
- If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, only the phone number is displayed on dialed numbers.

Answering a Call

1 Press [✓]/[●] when a call is received

2 Press [POWER] to end the call

Tip

- You can answer calls just by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 11-13) is set to ***ON***.
- If you miss a call, Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears.
- If caller is saved to Phone Book, caller's name appears on Display. If the caller is saved as Secret (page 4-4) entry, only the phone number appears when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***.
- When you receive a call with no Caller ID, either ***Unavailable***, ***Withheld***, or ***Payphone*** appears.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while receiving a call, use [◎] or [side keys].
- To stop ringtone during incoming call, press and hold [side key].

When You Cannot Answer Immediately

Placing an Incoming Call on Hold

Place an incoming call on hold when you are unable to answer it right away.

1 Press [POWER] when a call is received

Voice guidance in Japanese notifies the caller that you are unable to answer the call at the moment.

2 Press [✓]/[●] to answer the call

3 Press [POWER] to end the call

Note

- The caller is charged for the call while placed on hold.
- Pressing [POWER] while the caller is on hold terminates the call.

Tip

- When you are unable to answer a call (ie: your handset is out of range, a call is in progress, etc.) divert calls to; a preset phone number (page 14-3) or Voice Mail Center (page 14-5).

Recording a Message to Answering Machine

Record a caller's message to your handset when you are unable to answer a voice call. Save up to five 30-second messages to Answering Machine.

1 Press and hold [クリア/メモ]/[●] when a call is received

Outgoing message plays and recording starts.

- When recording capacity becomes full or the call ends, it stops automatically.

Note

- Answering Machine is unavailable for video calls (page 5-2) and Call Waiting (page 14-6).
- When five messages are recorded, Answering Machine is disabled. Delete messages to activate Answering Machine.

Tip

- To answer a call while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, press [●].
- Press [Y!] (🔊) when recording a message to hear the message through the speaker.
- To adjust the volume while the answer message is playing or a caller's message is being recorded, use [↕].

Playing Recorded Messages

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Ans Machine**

1 Select *Recordings*→[●]

2 Select a message→[●]

"[icon]" indicates unchecked messages, and "[icon]" indicates checked messages.

Tip

- Press [クリア/メモ] in Standby to view recorded messages.

Deleting Recorded Messages

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Ans Machine**

1 Select *Recordings*→[●]

2 Select a message→[Y!] (Menu)→*Delete*→[●]→*YES* →[●]

Rejecting a Call

1 Press [Y!] (Reject) when a call is received

Tip

- When the Call Forward (page 14-3) and Voice Mail (page 14-5) services are deactivated, you can reject an incoming call by pressing [✉] (Divert) when a call is received.
- When you reject an incoming call received during a call with the Call Waiting (page 14-6) service activated, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Reject Call***.
- By configuring the call rejection settings (page 11-13), you can reject specific incoming calls automatically.

Engaged Call Operations

Adjusting Earpiece Volume

1 Use [↕] during a call

The current setting appears.

2 Use [↕] to adjust the earpiece volume

Tip

- You can adjust the earpiece volume by pressing [▲] or [▼] during a call.
- Even if the volume is changed during a call it returns to its original setting when the call ends.

Recording the Other Party's Voice

Voice Record allows you to record the other party's voice during a call. Maximum recording time is 60 seconds.

1 During a call, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Voice Record*→[●]

- Recording stops when the maximum time is reached or the call ends. To stop recording manually, press [●].

Tip

- The recording is automatically saved to the ***Ring Song · Tone*** folder (page 9-2).
- For details on playing Voice Record recordings, see page 13-26.
- Voice Record is unavailable during a handsfree call, using a Bluetooth® compatible device.

Number Memo

Use the keypad to take a memo of a phone number or other number during a voice or video call. After the call ends, you can save the number to Phone Book or use it to make a call. You can store up to five number memos.

1 Press the keys on the keypad during a call

After the call ends, the number memo is automatically saved.

- You can enter a total of up to 32 numbers and symbols (*, #, +, -, P).
- See page 13-26 for details on how to view a number memo.

Tip

- Number Memo is available when making video calls, too.
- Alternatively, press the keys on the keypad during a call, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Number Memo*** to save a number memo.

Switching to Handsfree

1 Press [✉] ([speaker]) during a call

- To cancel handsfree, press [✉] ([speaker off]).

Call Log

The last 20 dialed numbers and received calls including Circle Talk calls can be viewed.

Viewing Dialed Numbers

1 In Standby, press [◀]

- To switch from the Dialed Number window to the Received Call window, press [◀] or [▶].
- To switch between Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press [✉] ([Circle Talk]/[voice/video]).
- In Dialed Number, the icons shown below appear.
  - [icon] Indicates outgoing voice calls.
  - [icon] Indicates outgoing video calls.
- For Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.
  - [icon] Indicates outgoing individual Circle Talk calls.
  - [icon] Indicates outgoing group Circle Talk calls.

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from ***Phone Book*** in the Main menu (page 1-20).
- Select a number from call log and press [Send] to make a voice call or [TV] and [■] to make a video call.
- Select an entry from call log and press and hold [Circle Talk] to make a Circle Talk call (page 18-13).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Dialed Number record.
- When there are 20 Dialed Number records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you make a call to a Phone Book entry, the name saved to Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you make a call to a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- From Dialed Number, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

  Voice Call / ***Video Call*** (page 5-2) / ***Circle Talk*** (page 18-13) / ***Intl. Calls*** (page 2-3) / ***Send Message*** (pages 15-5, 15-10) / ***To Phone Book*** (page 4-3) / ***Add to List*** (page 11-14) / ***Delete*** / ***Hide My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Show My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Call Log Lock*** (page 2-9)

Viewing Received Calls

1 **In Standby, press [▢■]**

- To switch from the Received Call window to the Dialed Number window, press [■▢] or [▢■].
- To switch between received Circle Talk call log and voice/video call log, press [✉] (/).
- In Received Call, the icons shown below appear.

  / Received Voice/Video calls
  / Missed Voice/Video calls
  / Rejected Voice/Video calls
  / Rejected Voice/Video calls with no Caller ID
  Received Voice calls from public phones
- For received Circle Talk call log, the icons shown below appear.

  Received Circle Talk calls
  Missed Circle Talk calls
  Rejected Circle Talk calls
  Rejected Circle Talk calls with no Caller ID

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can access call log from ***Phone Book*** in the Main menu (page 1-20).
- Select a number from call log and press [key] to make a voice call or [key] and [key] to make a video call.
- Select an entry from call log and press and hold [key] to make a Circle Talk call (page 18-13).
- Turning the handset off does not delete the Received Call record.
- When there are 20 Received Call records, the oldest records are replaced by new ones.
- When you receive a call from a Phone Book entry, the name saved to Phone Book is displayed on the call log. If you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, however, only the phone number is displayed.
- From Received Call, press [key] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Voice Call*** / ***Video Call*** (page 5-2) / ***Circle Talk*** (page 18-13) / ***Intl. Calls*** (page 2-3) / ***Send Message*** (pages 15-5, 15-10) / ***To Phone Book*** (page 4-3) / ***Add to List*** (page 11-14) / ***Delete*** / ***Hide My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Show My ID*** (page 11-14) / ***Call Log Lock*** (right)

Setting Call Log Lock

Set Call Log Lock to require Security Code for accessing Call Log (including Circle Talk Call Log).

1 **In Standby, press [key]/[key]→[key] (Menu)→*Call Log Lock*→[key]**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select *Lock*/*Unlock*→[key]**

Tip

- Call Log Lock can be set even when the Circle Talk Call Log is displayed.

Viewing Call Time

Check the previous or total call time.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Time&Cost**

Viewing the Total Call Time

Select ***All Calls*** → [key] → ***Time*** → [key]

Viewing the Last Call Time

Select ***Last Call*** → [key] → ***Time*** → [key]

Resetting the Total Call Time

Select ***All Calls***→[key]→***Time***→[key]→[key] (Menu)→***Reset***→[key]→ Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[key]

Note

- The displayed call time serves as a guide only.
- The total call time does not include mail communications, Web browsing, and Circle Talk connection and talking time.
- Up to 277 hours 46 minutes and 39 seconds can be displayed for the total call time.

Viewing Call Costs

View the cost for the last call or the total cost for all calls. The data for the total cost is saved to the USIM card.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Time&Cost**

Viewing the Last Call Cost
Select ***Last Call***→■→***Cost***→■

Viewing the Total Call Cost
Select ***All Calls***→■→***Cost***→■

Resetting the Total Call Cost
Select ***All Calls***→■→***Cost***→■→Y! (Menu)→***Reset***→■→Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5)→■→***YES***→■

Setting the Currency
Select ***Cost Unit***→■→Y! (Menu)→***Settings***→■→Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5)→■→Enter a currency (three characters)→■→Enter a rate→■→***YES***→■

Setting Call Cost Display
Select ***Cost Display***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

Note

- The displayed call cost serves as a guide only and may differ from the actual call cost billed.
- Sum of charges appears for Multiparty Call (page 14-7).
- The total call cost does not include mail communication and Web browsing charges, and the charge for the number of remarks made in Circle Talk sessions.
- When you make an international call, the call cost is not displayed.
- Call Cost may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

Setting Cost Limit

Set maximum cost for your monthly voice/video calls.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Time&Cost**

1 **Select *Cost Limit*→■**
- If Cost Limit has been set, you can view the balance.

2 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Set Max Limit*→■**

3 **Enter your PIN2 (page 1-5)→■ (twice)→Enter the maximum cost limit→■**

Note

- You cannot make voice and video calls if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit. A call will be disconnected if the total cost reaches the specified maximum call limit during the call.
- Cost Limit is unavailable if Call Cost (above) is unavailable.

Owner Information

Display ***My Details*** (page 4-11) such as the phone number and email address of your handset.

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book**

1 Select *My Details*→[■]

The owner information appears.

Viewing Owner Information during a Call

1 During a call, press [Y!] (Menu)→*My Details*→[■]

Setting/Canceling Manner Mode

Set Mode Settings to Silent to avoid disturbing others in public areas. When manner mode is set, "[icon]" appears.

- Turn the handset off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- In airplanes, turn off your handset so that it does not disturb flight safety.
- In such places as hospitals and research institutes, where no use of cell phones is allowed, turn off your handset so that it does not affect precision apparatuses.
- In such quite places as restaurants and hotel lobbies, be careful so that your talking voice does not bother others around you.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

1 In Standby, press and hold [#]/[side key]

Manner mode is set.

Canceling Manner Mode

1 In Standby, press and hold [#]/[side key] while manner mode is set

Manner mode is canceled.

Note

- Shutter click and recording start/end tone sound even in manner mode.
- If you set your answer status for Circle Talk to ***Auto Join*** in My Status (pages 18-5, 18-7), then you are automatically connected to Circle Talk, so you hear the other party's voice from the speaker even if manner mode is set.

Tip

- Vibration and alarm settings in manner mode (page 11-3) can be changed.

Setting/Canceling Offline Mode

Use offline mode to temporarily suspend all handset transmissions. In offline mode, incoming/outgoing calls and network services, such as transmission of S! Mail/SMS are blocked.
When offline mode is set to ***ON***, the signal strength indicator changes to "".

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Offline Mode**

1 **Press** ■ → ***ON/OFF*** → ■

Note

- When offline mode is set to ***ON***, incoming calls are blocked. Make sure offline mode is set to ***OFF*** if you need to use your handset as usual.
- Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are not possible when offline mode is set to ***ON***.
- Bluetooth® and Infrared transfer unavailable when Offline Mode is ***ON***.

About Emergency Calls

Emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) are available, even when the following restrictions are set.

- Password Lock (page 12-3)
- Call Barring (page 14-8)

Note

- If a video call is made to an emergency service, the call becomes a voice call.

Emergency Call Location Notification

Caller's location is notified to emergency agencies for emergency calls (110, 119 and 118).
There are two types of positioning information, GPS and base station positioning information.* This handset sends GPS positioning information. However if GPS information cannot be used because of your location, base station information is sent instead.
* If handset signal is received by a distant base station, location information may not be accurate.

- Location notification may be inaccurate, depending on the caller's location and signal strength.
- This system may not operate if the responding agency has not installed the proper system.
- If emergency numbers (110, 118 and 119) are dialed with the 184 prefix, location information is not provided. However, emergency agencies may retrieve location information in life-threatening cases.
- No application fees or Connection fees apply.

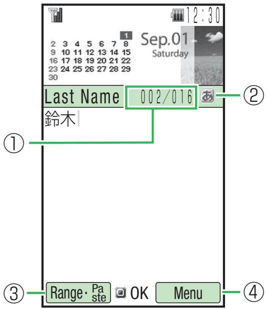
3 Text Entry

About Text Entry

Enter hiragana, katakana, kanji, alphanumerics, symbols, pictographs and emoticons.

There are four kinds of input methods: Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-9), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode. Unless otherwise noted, text entry operations are described for use in the text entry window using Standard mode.

Text Entry Window



①Number of characters entered/Maximum number of characters allowed is displayed. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the function.

②Indicates the current entry mode.

③Selects the range of text.
By pressing [■] when a text range is selected, you can perform operations such as copying or saving the selected text (pages 3-11, 3-13).

④By pressing [Y!] (Menu), you can perform operations such as arranging or editing mail text (pages 3-12, 15-7).

Switching Text Entry Modes

1 In a text entry window, press [文字]

● Unavailable text entry modes are not displayed.

2 Select an input mode→[■]

Input mode is switched.

Input Mode Icons

[あ] : Kanji (hiragana)
[A] : Double-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
[a] : Double-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
[A] : Single-byte alphanumerics (upper case)
[a] : Single-byte alphanumerics (lower case)
[0] : Double-byte numbers
[0] : Single-byte numbers
URL : Enter addresses from the address library (page 3-8).
Pict : Enter pictographs.
(^-^) : Enter emoticons.
My Pict : Enter pictographs in ***My Pictograms*** folder.

Tip

- In Input Method (page 3-16), you can switch between Standard mode, Beeper mode, T9 mode, and Multi-tap mode. The above icons are displayed in Standard Mode. If you switch to Beeper Mode, the icon changes from "[あ]" to "[あP]".

Key Assignment (Standard Mode)

Input Mode / Key	Kanji/Hiragana* (Double-byte)	Katakana (Single-byte)	Upper case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Lower case Alphanumerics (Double & Single-byte)	Numbers (Double & Single-byte)
1 あ .@	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ	ｱｲｳｴｵｧｨｩｪｫ	.@－＿1	.@－＿1	1
2 か ABC	かきくけこ	ｶｷｸｹｺ	ABC2	abc2	2
3 さ DEF	さしすせそ	ｻｼｽｾｿ	DEF3	def3	3
4 た GHI	たちつてとっ	ﾀﾁﾂﾃﾄｯ	GHI4	ghi4	4
5 な JKL	なにぬねの	ﾅﾆﾇﾈﾉ	JKL5	jkl5	5
6 は MNO	はひふへほ	ﾊﾋﾌﾍﾎ	MNO6	mno6	6
7 ま PQRS	まみむめも	ﾏﾐﾑﾒﾓ	PQRS7	pqrs7	7
8 や TUV	やゆよゃゅょ	ﾔﾕﾖｬｭｮ	TUV8	tuv8	8
9 ら WXYZ	らりるれろ	ﾗﾘﾙﾚﾛ	WXYZ9	wxyz9	9
0 わ +-、。	わをんー、。	ﾜｦﾝｰ､｡	～／？！0	～／？！0	0
✱ ゛゜ 絵	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons, ゛(dakuten), ゜(handakuten), ー (cho-on), 、(touten), 。(kuten)	Custom, ﾞ (dakuten), ﾟ (handakuten), ｰ (cho-on), ､ (touten), ｡ (kuten)	Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons		Custom, Pictographs, Emoticons
# A/a 記号	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case	Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL Toggle case		Symbols, Alphanumerics, URL
■	Determine entered text/finish text entry				Finish text entry
✥	Move cursor, Insert line breaks by pressing ▼ Move up and down the list of conversion predictions with ▲▼	Move cursor	Move cursor Insert line breaks by pressing ▼		
クリア/メモ	Delete entered text (page 3-12)				
↻文字	Display characters in opposite order				—

* While assigning a reading in hiragana to an entry in the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can enter only double-byte hiragana and " — " (cho-on).

Entering Characters

Kanji/Hiragana/Katakana

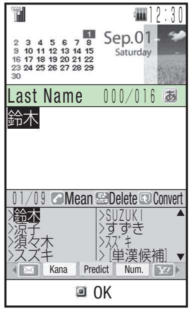
Enter characters in kanji (hiragana) entry mode, and it converts to kanji, etc.
Example: Entering 須々木

1 In a text entry window, enter すずき

- Press [3] (three times) → [▶] → [3] (three times) → [*] → [2] (twice).

2 Press [○]

- To exit the list and enter characters after すずき, press [クリア/メモ].



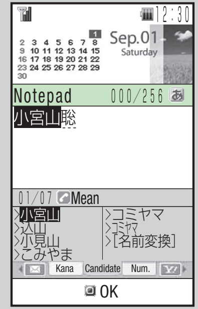
3 Use [✥] to select 須々木→[■]

須々木 is determined.

- To finish text entry, press [■] after accepting entered text.

Tip

- In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, entered text is converted in segments of words, phrases, and clauses. When it is not converted to your target kanji, change the range of selected text by using [◀▶] and then try again by pressing [○]. For example, if you enter こみやまさとし and convert by pressing [○], 小宮山聡 is displayed. If you want to segment it into こみや and まさとし, press [クリア/メモ] as shown on the screen on the right, select こみや with the cursor, and select your target kanji from the list of conversion predictions by pressing [○].



- If you press [*] after a character to which "゛" (dakuten) and "゜" (handakuten) cannot be added while converting text, "—" (cho-on), "、" (touten) and "。" (kuten) are displayed.

Lower Case (a, っ etc.)

In all the input modes except Numeric, you can change the case of a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).
Example: Changing あ to lower case

1 In a text entry window, press [1]

あ is entered.

2 Press [#]→[■]

ぁ is determined.

Adding ゛ or ゜

In kanji (hiragana) entry mode and single-byte katakana entry mode, you can add " ゛ " (dakuten) and " ゜ " (handakuten) to a character selected by the cursor (unconverted character) (compatible characters only).
Example: Entering が

1 In a text entry window, press [2]

か is entered.

2 Press [*] → [■]

が is determined.

● With characters like は to which both " ゛ " (dakuten) and " ゜ " (handakuten) can be added, you can switch between " ゛ " and " ゜ " by pressing [*].

Tip

● When the cursor is on a character to which " ゛ " (dakuten) and " ゜ " (handakuten) cannot be added, or when the cursor is to the right of a character (unconverted), you can enter " — " (cho-on), "、" (touten) and "。" (kuten) by pressing [*].

Single Kanji Conversion

Enter alternate readings to search for kanji.
Example: Entering 鱸(すずき)

1 In a text entry window, enter すずき

2 Press [key] (twice)

The kanji candidate is displayed.

●When 単漢候補 is not displayed in a text entry window, the word cannot be converted with Single Kanji conversion.

3 Select 鱸 → [■]

鱸 is determined.

Tip

● In kanji (hiragana) entry mode, enter いっぱん , がくじゅつ , かっこ , ぎりしゃ , たんい , ろしあ , きじゅつ , きごう or けいせん and press [key] twice to access the respective symbols menu.

Proper Name Conversion

In Proper Name Conversion, predictions appear as you enter each character.
Example: Entering *亜香梨* (Akari)

1 In a text entry window, enter *あかり* (Akari)→[key]→ Use [key] to select *名前変換* (Name Conversion)→[key]

2 Select *亜* (A)→[key]

3 Select *香* (ka)→[key]

4 Select *梨* (ri)→[key] (twice)

Tip

- To return to standard conversion, press [key].

Hiragana to Alphanumerics/Katakana Conversion

Enter alphanumerics and katakana in kanji (hiragana) entry mode.
Example: Entering ***TOM*** (single-byte) in kanji (hiragana) entry mode

1 In a text entry window, press the key to which the character is assigned

- Press [8] (once)→[6] (three times)→[key]→[6] (once)
  やふは is entered.

2 Press [key] (Kana)

The conversion candidates of the roman characters and katakana are displayed.

- By pressing [key] (Kana)/[key] (Num.), you can switch between roman character/katakana conversion and number conversion.

3 Press [key]→Use [key] to select *TOM* (single-byte) →[key]

TOM (single-byte) is determined.

Tip

- When you want to enter date and time, you can do so in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. For example, if you enter *あかさわ* by pressing [1][2][3][0] and then press [key] (Num.), ***12/30*** or ***12:30*** are displayed.

Displaying Characters in Opposite Order

In all the input modes except numeric, you can display unconverted characters on the cursor in the opposite order from the one on the Key assignments chart (page 3-3) by pressing [文字].
Example: Entering the character assigned to [2 かABC]

Press [2 かABC]: か→き→く→け→こ ⇒ Press [文字] after pressing [2 かABC]: か→こ→け→く→き

Symbols

Double-byte and single-byte symbols can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press [# A/a 記号]

The double-byte symbol list is displayed.

2 Select a symbol→[●]

The selected symbol is entered and the symbol list disappears.

- To enter symbols continuously from the symbol window, select symbols and press [文字].

Tip

- Symbols that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the symbol window. You can enter symbols by selecting from the log area, too.

Alphanumerics

1 In a text entry window, press [# A/a 記号] (twice)

The double-byte alphanumeric list is displayed.

- The number of times [# A/a 記号] is pressed differs depending on the function.

2 Select a number or letter→[●]

- Repeat to enter another letter.

Pictographs

See page 22-15 for information about the pictographs that can be entered.

1 In a text entry window, press [* 絵]

The pictograph list is displayed.

- You may be unable to enter pictographs depending on the function.

2 Select a pictograph→[●]

The selected pictograph is entered and the pictograph list disappears.

- To enter pictographs continuously from the pictograph window, select pictographs and press [文字].

Tip

- Pictographs that you have selected before are displayed in the log area at the top of the pictograph window. You can enter pictographs by selecting from the log area, too.
- You can enter pictographs by pressing → ***Pict*** in a text entry window, too.
- When you convert by pressing , pictographs may appear in the list of conversion predictions.

Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press (twice)

The emoticon list is displayed.

- The number of times is pressed differs depending on the function.

2 Select an emoticon→

The selected emoticon is entered and the emoticon list disappears.

- To enter emoticons continuously from the emoticon window, select emoticons and press .

Tip

- When you enter かお and convert it by pressing , twelve different emoticons appear in the list of conversion predictions.
- You can enter emoticons by pressing → (^-^) in a text entry window, too.

Space

1 In a text entry window, press

- To enter spaces before converted character, select spaces from the symbol window (page 3-7).

Line Break

1 In a text entry window, enter text and convert

2 Press to insert a line break

- To insert a line break after text has been converted, access line break from symbols window (page 3-7).
- Line break is unavailable in some text entry windows.

Mail & Web Extensions

Enter part of an email address and URL easily using the address library.

Example: Entering ***.co.jp***, which is part of an email address

1 In a text entry window, press →*URL*→

The address library is displayed.

2 Select *.co.jp*→

Beeper Mode

Switch the input method (page 3-16) to Beeper mode. When entering text, enter two digits to make one character. The combinations are as follows:

Press first \ Press next	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0
1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	ー	／
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			
8	や	（	ゆ	）	よ	＊	＃			
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5
0	わ	を	ん	゛	゜	6	7	8	9	0

- (green cell) indicates upper and lower case are available. Press # A/a 記号 to switch immediately after character entry.
- When you enter "A" and "a", all the characters will be single-byte.
- When you enter "A", "a", "A" and "a", hiragana will turn to katakana.
- When you enter "a" and "a", the characters will be in lower case.

Example: Entering よしお

1 In a text entry window, press 8 5 → 3 2 → 1 5 → ■

よしお is determined.

Text Conversion Functions

The handset is equipped with MobileRUPO, Toshiba's kana-kanji conversion engine.
MobileRUPO uses AI conversion, which predicts appropriate kanji from context (for example, *本を買う* and *犬を飼う*) and converts accordingly.
Also, by using word predictions (below), you can enter a long mail message in a short time.
If you save a kanji with an exceptional reading or frequently used abbreviations to the user dictionary (page 3-11), you can call them up the next time you enter text.

* MobileRUPO is a trademark of Toshiba Corporation.

Using Word Predictions

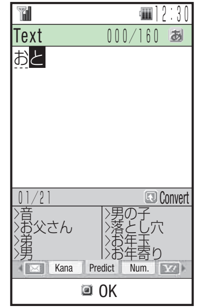
There are two kinds of word predictions, conversion predictions and phrase predictions. Conversion predictions display the list of conversion predictions based on characters entered in double-byte kana (kanji conversion) input mode. Phrase predictions learn phrases from entered paragraphs so that the next time you enter the first part of the phrase, the list of conversion predictions for the following phrase is displayed. By using word predictions, you can enter target phrases easily and quickly.
The more you use word predictions, the more they improve as a predictive dictionary. And the accuracy of conversion predictions will improve. You can also disable word predictions or reset the predictive dictionary to the initial state (page 3-15).

Conversion Prediction

Example: Entering *お父さん*

1 In a text entry window, press 1 (five times)→4 (five times)

The conversion candidates predicted from *おと* are displayed in the Predict area.



2 Press →Use to select *お父さん*→

お父さん is determined.

Phrase Prediction

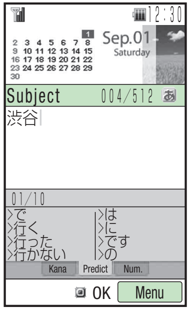
Example: Entering the same phrase *渋谷でライブ* that you have entered before

1 In a text entry window, enter *し*

渋谷 is displayed in the Predict area.

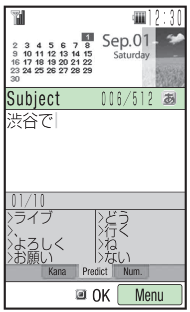
2 Press [□]→Use [✣] to select *渋谷*→[■]

渋谷 is determined. *で* is displayed in the Predict area.



3 Press [□]→Use [✣] to select *で*→[■]

で is determined. *ライブ* is displayed in the Predict area.



4 Press [□]→Use [✣] to select *ライブ*→[■]

ライブ is determined.

Adding a Word to the User Dictionary

The user dictionary lets you save kanji with an exceptional reading or frequently used abbreviations up to 100 entries. To use words saved in the user dictionary, enter a reading that you saved and convert in a text entry window.

1 In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Customize*→[■]→*Word List*→[■]→*To Word List*→[■]

2 Select *Word*→[■]→Enter the word→[■]

- You can enter up to 12 characters.
- Symbols and pictographs can also be registered.

3 Select *Reading*→[■]→Enter the reading→[■]

- You can enter up to eight characters.
- Enter the reading in double-byte hiragana.

4 Press [Y!] (OK)

Tip

- You can save up to four entries with the same reading.

Saving to User Dictionary during Text Entry

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ ✉ (Range･paste)

2 Select *Start*→ ■ →Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→ ■

- You can enter up to 12 characters.

3 Select *To Word List*→ ■

A window appears where you can save the selected words to the user dictionary.

4 Select *Reading*→ ■ →Enter the reading→ ■

5 Press Y! (OK)

Editing Saved Words

1 In a text entry window, press Y! (Menu)→ *Customize*→ ■ →*Word List*→ ■ →*Edit Word*→ ■

2 Select a word→ ✉ (Edit)→Select the word/reading→ ■ →Edit the word/reading→ ■

3 Press Y! (OK)

Editing Text

Editing Entered Text

1 In a text entry window, move the cursor to the left of the character you want to delete→ クリア/メモ

The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.

- To delete all the characters to the right of the cursor, press and hold クリア/メモ.
- Press クリア/メモ to change the text deletion method (page 3-17).

2 Enter a correct character

Tip

- When クリア/メモ is pressed when the cursor is at the end of a line of text, the last character is deleted. At this time, press and hold クリア/メモ to delete all text.
- By pressing Y! (Menu) → ***Jump*** → ■ → ***To End/To Top*** from a text entry window, the cursor jumps to the end or beginning of the text.

Copy/Cut/Paste

The clipboard is useful for text editing. Copied or cut words can temporarily be saved to the clipboard. The clipboard lets you copy or cut selected words or pictographs and paste them at the cursor position in a text entry window.

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→ ✉ (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→ ● →Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→ ●**

3 **Select *Cut*/*Copy*→ ●**

The selected range of the characters are stored on the clipboard.

4 **Position the cursor→ ✉ (Range･paste)→*Paste*→ ● →Select the item from the clipboard→ ●**

Tip

- To clear the clipboard, press ✉ (Range･paste) → ***Paste*** → ● → Select the item from the clipboard → Y! (Menu) → ***Delete***/***Delete All*** from a text entry window.
- Up to 20 of the most recent items can be saved to the clipboard.

Undoing the Last Operation

1 **In a text entry window, press Y! (Menu)→*Undo* → ●**

Note

- You cannot undo converted or replaced (page 3-15) text.

Insert

Select information from Notepad (page 13-9) or Phone Book (page 4-3) and insert it during text entry. You can also insert a signature (page 15-23) in an S! Mail or SMS message.

1 **In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Insert* →[■]**

2 **Select an item to be quoted**

Phone Book
Select ***Phone Book***→[■]→Select a Phone Book entry→[■]→Select an item→[■]

Information Saved to My Details
Select ***My Details***→[■]→Select an item→[■]

Phrases
Select ***Phrases***→[■]→Select a phrase→[■]

Emoticon
Select ***Emoticon***→[■]→Select a category of the emoticon→[■]→Select an emoticon→[■]

Signature in an S! Mail/SMS
Select ***Signature***→[■]→***Signature 1***/***Signature 2***→[■]

Notepad
Select ***Notepad***→[■]→Select a notepad→[■]

Message
Select ***Message Box***→[■]→Select a folder→[■]→Select a message→[■]

URL History
Select ***URL History***→[■]→Select a URL→[■]

Additional Functions

Saving to Notepad

Save selected text in a text entry window to Notepad (page 13-9).

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→[✉] (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→[■]→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→[■]**

3 **Select *To Notepad*→[■]→Select a notepad→[■]**

● If you save to a Notepad with a saved entry, it will be overwritten with the new entry.

Saving to Phone Book

Save a selected phone number or email address in a text entry window to Phone Book. If a selected item is just numbers, it will be saved to ***Phone Number***, and if it is single-byte alphanumerics, hyphens, or underbars containing a single "@", it will be saved to ***Email***.

● For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→[✉] (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→[■]→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→[■]**

3 **Select *To Phone Book*→[■]→*Add New*/*Add*→[■]**

Note

- If a selected item contains characters or symbols that cannot be saved to Phone Book, it won't be saved to Phone Book.

Tip

- Even if selected numbers contain "✱#/P−+( )" in between, they will be recognized as a telephone number. However, "/( )" will be omitted when they are saved.

Replacing Previously Converted Text

Select previously converted text and replace it. However, kanji and pictographs cannot be replaced collectively.

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→✉ (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→■→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→■**

3 **Select *Convert*→■**

Converting Hiragana to Kanji
Select ***Kana/Kanji***→■→Select the conversion candidates→■
Convert All into Full Width
Select ***Full Width***→■
Convert All into Half Width
Select ***Half Width***→■
Convert All into Upper Case
Select ***Upper Case***→■
Convert All into Lower Case
Select ***Lower Case***→■

Replacing Text with Text Saved to the Clipboard

Replace selected text with text saved to the clipboard (page 3-13).

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→✉ (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→■→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→■**

3 **Select *Replace*→■→Select a character to replace from the clipboard→■**

Deleting

1 **In a text entry window, move the cursor to the first character of the text range→✉ (Range･paste)**

2 **Select *Start*→■→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→■**

3 **Select *Delete*→■**

Resetting a Prediction Dictionary/Conversion Dictionary

Reset what the dictionaries learned in Word Predictions (page 3-10) to the initial state.

1 **In a text entry window, press Y! (Menu)→ *Customize*→■→*Reset Learned*→■**

2 **Select *Prediction/Conversion*→■→*YES*→■**

Setting Word Predictions

Set whether to use Word Predictions (page 3-10) or not.

1 In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→ ***Customize*→[●]→*Prediction*→[●]→*Predict Text/ Phrase*→[●]**

2 Select *ON/OFF*→[●]

Setting the Input Method

Select input method for entering text from Standard mode, Beeper mode (page 3-9), T9 mode and Multi-tap mode.

- T9 mode: Each press of a key narrows down word predictions. Use [↕] to scroll through predictions.
- Multi-tap mode: Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Each press of the key cycles through the characters assigned to that key.

1 In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→ ***Customize*→[●]→*Input Method*→[●]**

2 Select *Standard/Beeper/T9/Multi-tap*→[●]

Changing Font Size

1 In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→ ***Customize*→[●]→*Font Size*→[●]**

2 Select a font size→[●]

Custom Window

Save frequently used symbols and pictographs to Custom Window.

1 In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→ ***Customize*→[●]→*Custom Window*→[●]**

2 Select *Add to Window*→[●]→Enter symbols and pictographs→[●]

Setting Display of the Custom Window

Select *Display* → [●] → *Display/Do not Display* → [●]

Creating Original Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press [絵文字]→*(^-^)*→[●]→ ***User Created*→[●]**

2 Select the item not registered→[✉] (Edit)→Create an emoticon→[●] (twice)

Setting the Text Deletion Method

Set the operation performed when [クリア/メモ] is pressed when inputting text in the text entry window.

1 **In a text entry window, press [Y!] (Menu)→** ***Customize*→[●]→*Clear Setting*→[●]**

2 **Select *Delete*/*Back Space*→[●]**

- Selecting ***Delete*** deletes the text to the right of the cursor. Selecting ***Back Space*** deletes text to the left of the cursor.

4 Phone Book

Phone Book Basics

Your handset can save up to 1,000 Phone Book entries. You can also save Phone Book entries to the USIM card and a memory card. The maximum number of entries you can save depends on the capacity of the USIM card or memory card.

Back-up Important Information
When the battery pack is exhausted or removed for long periods, Phone Book entries may be lost. Handset damage may also affect handset information recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost or altered data.

Phone Book Entry Items

Item	Description	Supported/Not Supported		
		Phone Memory	Memory Card	USIM Card
Name/ Last Name	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select ***Name*** when saving to USIM card.)	○	○	○
Name/ First Name				
Reading-Last	Enter up to 16 characters. (Select ***Reading*** when saving to USIM card.)	○	○	○
Reading-First				
Memory Number	A four-digit number (Entry Number)	○	○	○
Phone Number	Enter up to five numbers on Phone Memory/one on USIM card (32 digits each).	○	○	○
Email	Enter up to five addresses on Phone Memory (128 single-byte alphanumerics each) / one on USIM card (60 single-byte alphanumerics).	○	○	○
Address	Enter postal code (20 characters), country name (32 characters), state/province (64 characters), city name (64 characters) and street name/number (64 characters).	○	○	–
Job Title	Enter up to 32 characters.	○	○	–
Company	Enter up to 32 characters.	○	○	–
Birthday	Enter birth date.	○	○	–
URL	Enter up to 128 bytes.	○	○	–
Group	Entries can be sorted into groups.	○	○	○
Picture	Set an image to appear for incoming calls/messages.	○	–	–
Options	Set external light, ringtone, secret setting, etc. individually for each Phone Book entry.	○	–	–
Location	Set and display location information.	○	–	–
Note	Enter up to 256 characters.	○	–	–

Adding a New Entry

Enter a name, phone number and email address. Storage location of Phone Book entries can be specified beforehand (page 4-13).

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book**

1 **Select *New Entry*→[■]**

A new Phone Book entry window appears.

Entering a Name

Select ***Name***→[■]→***Last Name/First Name***→[■]→Enter a Last Name/First Name→[■]→[✉] (OK)

- Characters entered for name (reading for kanji) appear. To correct reading, select ***Reading-Last/Reading-First***.

Entering Phone Numbers

Select ***Phone Number***→[■]→Enter a phone number→[■]→Select a phone number type→[■]

- To enter a manual hyphen "-" or a pause "P" (page 13-38), press [Y!] (Menu) while entering a phone number and select ***Manual Hyphen/Pause(P)***.

Entering Email Addresses

Select ***Email***→[■]→Enter an email address→[■]→Select an email type→[■]

2 **Press [✉] (OK)**

Note

- ***Name***, ***Phone Number*** or ***Email*** field must be entered to save new entry.
- When you save to USIM Phone Book (page 4-13), enter both the first name and last name in the ***Name*** field.

Tip

- Alternatively, press [○] → [✉] (Create) to create a new entry from Standby.
- If the entered name already exists, after you press [✉] (OK), a message asks if you wish to overwrite the existing entry.

Setting a Picture

1 **In a new Phone Book entry window, select *Picture* →[■]**

Capturing New Image

Select ***Take Picture***→[■]→Take a picture→[■]

- For details on taking pictures, see page 7-8.

Selecting from Data Folder

Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→***Pictures/Digital Camera***→[■]→Select a picture→[■]

- If the selected picture is too large, change the size (page 7-25).

Note

- If Property (page 9-10) is not available for forwarding, the picture file cannot be saved as Picture.

Setting Ringtone & Other Options

1 **In a new Phone Book entry window, select *Options* →■**

External Light

Select ***Voice Call*/*Video Call*/*Message*/*Circle Talk*/*Notification***→■→***ExternalLight***→■→Select a color/***OFF*/*Same as Phone***→■

Ringtone Volume

Select ***Voice Call*/*Video Call*/*Message*/*Circle Talk*/*Notification***→■→***Ringtone Vol.***→■→***Options*/*Same as Phone***→■→Adjust the volume→■

Ringtone Pattern

Select ***Voice Call*/*Video Call*/*Message*/*Circle Talk*/*Notification***→■→***Ringtone***→■→***Patterns*/*Melodies*/*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*/*Same as Phone***→■→Select a pattern→■

Vibration Pattern

Select ***Voice Call*/*Video Call*/*Message*/*Circle Talk*/*Notification***→■→***Vibration***→■→Select a pattern/***OFF*/*Same as Phone***→■

Ring Time for Incoming Messages/Hot Status Notifications

Select ***Message*/*Notification***→■→***Duration***→■→***Set Duration*/*1 Cycle*/*Same as Phone***→■→Enter the ringing time→■

Save Location for Incoming Messages

Select ***Message***→■→***MessageFolder***→■→Select a folder/***None***→■

Secret Setting

Select ***Secret***→■→***ON*/*OFF***→■

- To set an entry as a Secret entry, choose ***ON***. To view Secret entries, switch Secret (page 12-5) to ***Show***. indicates Secret entry.

Displaying Name on External Display

Select ***Ext. Display***→■→***ON*/*OFF*/*Same as Phone***→■

Tip

- If you select ***Same as Phone***, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 11-4). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 11-11).
- When you make a call to a party with Secret set to ***ON*** and Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, only the phone number is recorded in Dialed Calls.
- When you receive a call from a party with Secret set to ***ON*** and Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***, only the phone number is displayed.

Setting Location Information

1 **In a new Phone Book entry window, select *Personal Info.*→● →*No Location*→●**

Setting Current Location Information

Select ***Position***→●→Start positioning→●→✉ (OK)

Selecting from Location Log

Select ***Location Logs***→●→Select location information→●→✉ (OK)

Selecting from Location Memos

Select ***My Locations***→●→Select location information→●→✉ (OK)

Selecting from Picture File

Select ***My Pictures***→●→Select a file with location information→●→✉ (OK)

Setting Other Information

1 **In a new Phone Book entry window, select an item→●**

Address/Job Title/Company

Select ***Personal Info.***→●→Select an item→●→Enter information→●→✉ (OK)

Birthday

Select ***Personal Info.***→●→***Birthday***→●→Enter the date→●→✉ (OK)

● Enter four digits for the year and if the month or date is a single digit prefix it with a 0.

URL

Select ***Personal Info.***→●→***URL***→●→Enter a URL→●→select a type→●→✉ (OK)

Group

Select ***No Group***→●→Select a group→●

Note

Select ***Note***→●→Enter a reminder→●

Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select the current Entry Number→●→Enter a new Entry Number→●

Tip

- If the storage location (page 4-13) is set to ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***, you can select a group from groups saved in Phone Memory. If it is set to ***USIM***, you can select a group from groups saved in USIM.

Saving Numbers from Call Log

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **Call Log**

1 **Select a phone number→Y! (Menu)→*To Phone Book*→●→*Add New*→●**

● To add the phone number to an existing Phone Book entry, select ***Add*** and select the entry.

Tip

- You can add a phone number or email address from the received messages.
- After entering a phone number, you can also press ● to add the phone number.

Checking the Number of Phone Book Entries

- When Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, the number of entries other than those with Secret set to ***ON*** is displayed.

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book**

1 Select *Memory Status*→■

- Press [Y!] (Count) or [Y!] (Rate) to switch between the number of entries and the usage rate.

Setting Groups

Set the group name and icon. For each group, the external light, ringtone volume, ringtone pattern and vibration for incoming calls/messages can be set. However priority is given to the setting of each Phone Book entry.

Group Names and Icons

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **Group**

1 Select a group→■

- Press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***To USIM*** or ***To Phone*** to switch between the Phone Memory and the USIM.

2 Select the Group Name field→■→Enter a group name→■

3 Select a group icon→■

4 Press [✉] (OK)

Tip

- Select a group name and press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Change Icon

Group Options

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ Group

1 **Select a group→■**

2 **Select *Options*→■**

External Light

Select ***Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification***→■→***ExternalLight***→■→Select a color/***OFF/Same as Phone***→■

Ringtone Volume

Select ***Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification***→■→***Ringtone Vol.***→■→***Options/Same as Phone***→■→Adjust the volume→■

Ringtone Pattern

Select ***Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification***→■→***Ringtone***→■→***Patterns/Melodies/Phone Memory/Memory Card/Same as Phone***→■→Select a pattern→■

Vibration Pattern

Select ***Voice Call/Video Call/Message/Circle Talk/Notification***→■→***Vibration***→■→Select a pattern/***OFF/Same as Phone***→■

Ring Time for Incoming Messages/Hot Status Notifications

Select ***Message/Notification***→■→***Duration***→■→***Set Duration/1 Cycle/Same as Phone***→■→Enter the ringing time→■

Folder for Saving Incoming Messages

Select ***Message***→■→***MessageFolder***→■→Select a folder/***None***→■

3 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Tip

- While selecting a group, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the group, some items may not appear):
  Reset/To USIM/To Phone
- While selecting ***Options***, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
  Reset Options
- If you select ***Same as Phone***, the sound/vibration settings will be the same as the corresponding settings of Sounds (page 11-4). The external light setting will be the same as the corresponding settings of External Light (page 11-11).

Using Phone Book

1 In Standby, press

- Press or to display the previous or next row of the Japanese syllabary.

2 Select an entry→

- Press or to display the previous or next entry of the same row.

Making a Call

Select a phone number→

Sending an S! Mail or SMS Message

Select a phone number/email address→ (Menu)→***As Mail***→

- For details on creating S! Mail, see page 15-5.
- For details on creating SMS, see page 15-10.

Tip

- In Standby, press and hold 0 to 9 to display the search window of the row assigned to each dial key.
- When Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Show***, an entry with Secret (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** is displayed. "" appears for the entry.
- The current status (Hot Status information) is displayed for Phone Book entries that are saved to Hot Status Members List (page 18-4).
- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- You can also select ***Phone Book*** from the Main menu to display Phone Book entries.

Tip

- After displaying Phone Book entries, press (Menu) to perform the following:
  Call/Intl. Calls/Search Mode/Delete/Export/Send vCard/Copy/Move/Change View/Sort by/Hot Status/Active Window
- After displaying Phone Book entries, you can also select an entry and press to make a call. If the entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

Switching Phone Books

Switch between ***Phone/USIM***, ***Phone Memory***, ***USIM*** and ***Memory Card*** Phone Books.

Phone Memory Phone Book

USIM Phone Book

Memory Card Phone Book

1 In Standby, press

2 Press (Menu)→*Change View*→ →Select a storage location→

Phone Book Search Modes

Select one of the six search modes. The selected search mode is used the next time you open Phone Book.

1 In Standby, press [ ]

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→ *Search Mode*→●

By Displaying the List of Phone Book Entries (Default)

Select ***List View***→●→Select an entry→●

By Entering the First Character of a Reading in 1-touch (*2タッチ検索* (2-touch), if *言語選択* (Language) (page 11-11) is set to *日本語* (Japanese))

Select ***By 1-Touch***→●→Press a key from [0] to [9], [*], or [#]→Select an entry→●

By Entering a Reading

Select ***By Reading***→●→Enter a reading→●→Select an entry →●

By Entering a Memory Number (Entry Number)

Select ***By Memory No.***→●→Enter an Entry Number→●→ Select an entry→●

By Entering a Phone Number

Select ***By Phone No.***→●→Enter a phone number→●→Select an entry→●

By Selecting a Group

Select ***Group Filter***→●→Select a group→●→Select an entry →●

Tip

- The keypad assignment used in *2タッチ検索* is as follows. For example, press [8] [5] to display the entries with reading starting from *よ*. To display roman characters, press [*]. To display other characters, press [#].

Press first \ Press next	1	2	3	4	5
1	あ	い	う	え	お
2	か	き	く	け	こ
3	さ	し	す	せ	そ
4	た	ち	つ	て	と
5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ
7	ま	み	む	め	も
8	や	―	ゆ	―	よ
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ
0	わ	を	ん	―	―

- The characters in the Reading field of Phone Book are used to search an entry in *2 タッチ検索* .

Changing the Order of Phone Book Entries

1 In Standby, press [ ]→[Y!] (Menu)→ *Sort by*→●

2 Select *Alphabet*/*Birthday*→●

Copying/Moving Phone Book Entries

Copy or move entries between Phone Memory, Memory Card and USIM Phone Books.

1 In Standby, press [key]

Copying/Moving One Entry

Select an entry→ [Menu key] (Menu)→***Copy/Move***→ [■] →***One***→ [■]

Copying/Moving Multiple Entries

Press [Menu key] (Menu)→***Copy/Move***→ [■] →***Select Multi***→ [■] →Select entries→ [■] → [Mail key] (Copy) / [Mail key] (Move)

Copying/Moving All Entries

Press [Menu key] (Menu)→***Copy/Move***→ [■] →***All***→ [■]

2 Select *Phone Memory/USIM/Memory Card*→ [■]

Note

- The items you can save to Phone Book differ depending on the Phone Memory, Memory Card or USIM Phone Book (page 4-2).

Tip

- While selecting multiple entries, press [Menu key] (Menu) to perform the following:
  View/Mark All/Unmark All

Editing Phone Book Entries

Edit and delete entries in Phone Book.

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select an entry→ [■]

3 Select an item→ [■] **→Edit an item→** [■]

4 Press [Mail key] **(OK)→*Save/Save as New*→** [■]

Tip

- If the Navigation Key settings (page 11-12) have been changed, different Navigation Key operations may be necessary.
- While selecting an item of the entry, press [Menu key] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the item, some items may not appear):
  Edit/Call/As Mail/Intl. Calls/Hide My ID/Show My ID/ Hot Status/Change Type/Clear Field/Change Pic./Remove Pic./ File Name

Deleting Phone Book Entries

1 In Standby, press [Phone Book key]

Deleting One Entry

Select an entry→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[●]→***One***→[●]→***YES***→[●]

Deleting Multiple Entries

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[●]→***Select Multi***→[●]→Select entries→[●]→[✉] (Delete)→***YES***→[●]

Deleting All Entries

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[●]→***All***→[●]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[●]

Owner Information

Save your own information to ***My Details***. Your name, reading, five phone numbers, five email addresses, picture, address, birthday and location information can be saved. Also, check saved information during a call (page 2-11) or insert it into a message.

Adding Information

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **My Details**

1 Select an item→[Y!] (Menu)→*Edit*→[●]→Enter information→[●]

Setting Your Name

Select ***Name***→[●]→[Y!] (Menu)→***Edit***→[●]→Enter your name→[●]→[✉] (OK)

2 Press [✉] (OK)

Tip

- For details on setting items see page 4-3.
- If you press [✉] (Send) in Step 1, you can send your own phone number by S! Mail, Bluetooth® or infrared communication.

Using Your Location Information

Main menu ▶ Phone Book ▶ My Details

1 **Select *Personal Info.*→■→*Location Exist*→ Y! (Menu)**

- If ***Location Exist*** does not appear, select ***No Location*** and set the Location Information.

Checking the Map from Location Information

Select ***Open Map***→■→***Send/Ask Once Only***→■→The navigation application starts and the map appears

- If you select ***Ask Once Only***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Sending Location Information by S! Mail

Select ***Location Mail***→■→ Create a message

Editing Location Information

Select ***Add Location***→■

Deleting Location Information

Select ***Delete***→■

Tip

- If you have not set location information, you can only select ***Add Location***.

Speed Dial

1 **In Standby, enter the last two digits of the entry number→ [call key]**

Tip

- For entry numbers 0000 through 0009, enter the last digit and press [call key].
- If Phone Book entry contains more than one phone number, a call is made to the first phone number.

Setting Phone Book

Setting the Default Storage Location

Preset the default storage location for new Phone Book entries.

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Select Storage*→■**

2 **Select *Always Ask*/*Phone Memory*/*USIM*/*Memory Card*→■**

- If you want to set the storage location every time you save an entry, select ***Always Ask***.

Prohibiting Use of Phone Book

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Phone Book Lock*→■**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select *Lock*→■**

- If you want to use Phone Book, enter your security code to temporarily cancel Phone Book Lock.

Note

- If Phone Book Lock is set to ***Lock***, speed dial function (page 4-12) is unavailable for making calls.

S! Address Book

Use S! Address Book to save and manage the handset's Phone Book on the network server.

The following functions are available for S! Address Book.

Function	Description
Backup (Synchronization)	Back up Phone Book to the server from the handset. Select manual or automatic synchronization (page 4-15).
Reload (Synchronization)	Reload Phone Book on the server to the handset. Select from the three reloading methods (page 4-16).
Editing*	Edit Phone Book on the server from the PC.
Import/Export*	Download Phone Book on the server to the PC and upload Phone Book in the PC to the server.
Birthday Notification*	If the server's Phone Book has the birthday information, receive an SMS message from the server notifying you of people's birthdays.
Email Address Notification*	Inform friends of your new email address by sending a notice to multiple addresses.

* For details, see the website below (as of June, 2007).
http://www.softbank.jp/SAB

About Subscription

- A separate subscription is required to use the S! Address Book service. For details, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- You will be sent a user ID and password notification mail (SMS) after your S! Address Book application is complete. If you do not receive a user ID and password notification mail, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service.
- In case you replace your handset, the compatibility with a new model is as follows:
  - 3G series (compatible with S! Address Book): Phone Book stored on the server is retained, and you can use it from your new handset.
  - 3G series (not compatible with S! Address Book): The service of S! Address Book continues and Phone Book on the server is retained. However, you cannot access to Phone Book from your new handset (you can access from a PC).
  - V3, V4, V5, V6, and V8 series: S! Address Book is canceled automatically, and Phone Book on the server is deleted.
- When you cancel S! Address Book, Phone Book on the server is deleted.

Operating Precautions

- If you forget your password, perform the following:
  In Standby, press Y! →*設定・申込* →*利用状況の確認*
  - Follow the onscreen instructions.
- Try again if synchronization failed due to poor reception or a low battery. Synchronization may have taken place with ***Synchronize*** regardless of the synchronization type setting.
- If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of ***Synchronize***, ***From Client***, or ***Backup*** after deleting all the entries on Phone Book on your handset, Phone Book on the server is deleted. If you synchronize Phone Book with the synchronization type of ***Synchronize***, ***From Server***, or ***Restore*** after deleting all the entries in Phone Book on the server, Phone Book on your handset is deleted.
- Of Phone Book items, ***Picture*** and ***Personal Info.*** are exempted from synchronization. These items set in the handset are all deleted if you synchronize in ***Restore*** type.
- SoftBank is not liable for any loss of information in Phone Book on the handset and the server due to cancellation of the service or errors during synchronization.
- In order to maintain consistency between Phone Book on your handset and the server, we recommend that you synchronize Phone Book regularly. It may take time to synchronize after you carry out a lot of editing (modification, addition, deletion, etc.) on Phone Book on your handset or the server.

Synchronizing Phone Book

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **S! Addr. Book** ▶ **Start Sync**

1 Select *Start*→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

- Follow the onscreen instructions.

Note

- Upon starting synchronization, your handset is connected to the Internet. A communication fee is charged during Internet connection. Ending synchronization terminates the connection automatically.

Tip

- When synchronizing for the first time, ***Synchronize*** is used regardless of the synchronization type setting (page 4-16).
- The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. ***Synchronize*** is set by default.

Synchronization Settings

Automatic Synchronization

Select from manual and automatic synchronization. If you select automatic mode, synchronization is performed at fixed intervals.

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **S! Addr. Book** ▶ **Sync Settings**

1 Select the current Auto Sync setting→■→*ON*/*OFF*→■

- After selecting ***ON***, perform the following to set the synchronization schedule.
  Enter your security code (page 1-25) → ***After Updated***/***Weekly***/***Monthly*** → ■
  If you select ***Weekly***, you also will need to specify the day of the week and time. If you select ***Monthly***, you also will need to specify the day and time.
- If you select ***After Updated***, synchronization will be performed automatically after about 10 minutes whenever the handset's Phone Book is edited.

2 Press ✉ (Save)

Tip

- The synchronization type is set to the same type for manual and automatic synchronization. The synchronization type you set first is used until you change it. ***Synchronize*** is set by default.

Synchronization Type

Select from the following types.

Type	Description	Note
Synchronize	Back up any changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server and download any new information in the server's Phone Book to the handset simultaneously.	If information in the same field in both the handset and on the server has been changed, the information on the server takes priority.
From Client	Back up changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book to the server.	Changes to the information in the server's Phone Book are not reflected to the handset.
From Server	Upload changes to the information in the server's Phone Book to the handset.	Changes to the information in the handset's Phone Book are not reflected to the server.
Backup	Delete the existing Phone Book data on the server and back up all Phone Book data in the handset to the server.	All the information in the server's Phone Book is deleted.
Restore	Delete the existing Phone Book data in the handset and reload all Phone Book data on the server to the handset.	All the information in the handset's Phone Book is deleted. All items exempt from synchronization (page 4-14) will not be uploaded.

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **S! Addr. Book** ▶ **Sync Settings**

1 Select the current Sync Type setting→■→Select a synchronization type→■→✉ (Save)

Checking Synchronization Log

Main menu ▶ **Phone Book** ▶ **S! Addr. Book** ▶ **Sync Log**

1 Select a record→■

5 Video Call

About Video Calls

Make video calls with another party. The other party must use a video call compatible handset.

- Change the handset into Self-portrait position (page 1-13) to send your live image taken by the camera.

Indicators



- Video Call
- Mute My Voice
- Mute All
- Faster Moving Mode
- Standard Mode
- Better Picture Mode
- Handsfree ON
- Handsfree (Bluetooth® connection)
- Image Transfer OFF
- Sending Picture
- Voice Connection Established
- Video Connection Established

Making a Video Call

While you are making a video call, pictures being taken by the camera will be sent over to the other party. You can also select to send a still image instead of pictures now being taken.

1 Enter a phone number and press [key]

The video call is made.

- When Self-view (page 5-5) is set as ***ON***, confirm an image of yourself as a camera image and press [■] to send outgoing image.

2 Press [POWER] to end the call

Note

- When Cost Limit (page 2-10) is set and the limit is reached, outgoing calls are blocked. If the limit is reached during a call, the call ends.

Tip

- During video calls, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***End Call***/***Hold***/***Mute***/***Screen Set.***/***Alt. Picture*** (page 5-4)/***Send Picture*** (page 5-5)/***Phone Book*** (page 4-8)/***Call Log***/***My Details***

Answering a Video Call

1 Press [Send]/[Video]/[●] when a video call arrives

A confirmation window appears. Select ***YES*** or ***NO*** and press [●] to send or block your outgoing image.

- Press [✉] ( ) while the handset is ringing/vibrating to view yourself before sending your live image.

2 Press [POWER] to end the call

Tip

- You can place an incoming video call on hold (page 2-4).
- You can reject an incoming video call if you press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Reject Call*** when a call is received.
- You can answer video calls only by opening the handset when Open to Talk (page 11-13) is set to ***ON***.
- If you miss a video call, Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears.
- If caller is saved to Phone Book, caller's name appears on Display. If the caller is saved as Secret (page 4-4) entry, only the phone number appears when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***.
- To adjust the ringtone volume while a video call is being received, use [▲▼].
- During calls, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***End Call***/***Hold***/***Mute***/***Screen Set.***/***Alt. Picture*** (page 5-4)/***Send Picture*** (page 5-5)/***Phone Book*** (page 4-8)/***Call Log***/***My Details***

Operations during a Video Call

Adjusting the Speaker Volume

1 During a call, use [▲▼]

Muting Microphone

1 During a call, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Mute*→[●]

2 Select *Mute My Voice*/*Mute All*→[●]

- To cancel the mute, press [●] during a call.

Switching between Earpiece & Speaker

Switch between the earpiece and speaker during a call.

1 During a call, press [✉] (/)

Using Zoom

1 During a call, use [◄►]

Note

- Zoom is unavailable when a still picture is set for outgoing image.

5 Video Call

Switching the Outgoing Image

Switch the outgoing image (between the alternative picture and live image taken by the camera) during a call.

1 During a call, press ■

Switching Image Windows

Switch Outgoing/Incoming Image windows.

1 During a call, press Y! (Menu)→*Screen Set.*→■

2 Select *Switch*→■

Large Incoming Image/Small Outgoing Image
Select ***In. Prior***→■
Incoming Image Only
Select ***Incoming Only***→■
Small Incoming Image/Large Outgoing Image
Select ***Out. Prior***→■
Outgoing Image Only
Select ***Outgoing Only***→■

Changing Image Quality

Adjust incoming image quality (page 5-5) during a call.

1 During a call, press Y! (Menu)→*Screen Set.*→■

2 Select *Image Quality*→■

3 Select the output format→■

Changing Alternative Image

1 During a call, press Y! (Menu)→*Alt. Picture*→■

2 Select *Alt. Pic. ON*→■

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image
Select ***Preset***→■
Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card
Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select an image →■
- Handset automatically adjusts image size.

Tip

- After ending a call, the alternative picture will return to the setting specified in the Alternative Picture setting (page 5-5).

Sending a Picture

1 **During a call, press ☒ (Menu)→*Send Picture*→■**

2 **Select *Send Pic. ON*→■**

3 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→■→Select an image→■**

Video Call Settings

Methods for making and receiving video calls and images to be displayed can be set beforehand.

Alternative Image

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 **Select *Alt. Picture*→■→*ON*→■**

- If you select ***OFF***, the camera image will be sent out.
- You can change the alternative picture during a call (page 5-4).

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select ***Preset***→■ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select ***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→■→Select an image →■ (twice)

Self-view Confirmation

Confirm the self-view (the image to be sent) by activating the camera automatically before sending out a video call.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 **Select *Self-view*→■→*ON*/*OFF*→■**

Image Quality

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 **Select *Image Quality*→■**

2 **Select the output format→■**

- You can change the image quality during a call (page 5-4).

Auto Answer

When the Auto Answer function for video calls is set to ***ON***, video calls received from phone numbers in the Auto Answer list are answered automatically without having to press a key.

- Regardless of manner mode setting (page 11-2), the speaker will beep and the video call is automatically connected.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 **Select *Auto Answer*→■→*ON/OFF*→■ (twice)→*ON*/*OFF*→■**

Note

- Auto Answer is unavailable when handset is closed.

Adding a Phone Number to Auto Answer List

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 Select *Auto Answer*→[■]→*Answer List*→[■]

2 Press [✉] (Add)→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→[■]→Select a Phone Book entry→[■]→Select a phone number→[■] (twice)

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Phone Number***→[■]→Enter a phone number→[■] (twice)

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select ***Call Log***→[■]→Select an entry→[■] (twice)

Tip

- To edit/delete a number, press [Y!] (Menu) from the Answer List window (see Step 1) and choose ***Edit*** or ***Delete***.

Mute

Turn off microphone and/or earpiece during video calls.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 Select *Mute*→[■]

2 Select *Mute My Voice*/*Mute All*/*OFF*→[■]

- Mute microphone or earpiece during calls (page 5-3).

Speaker

Select Speaker or Earpiece for sound output. Set to ***ON*** to set for Speaker.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 Select *Loud Speaker*→[■]

2 Select *ON*/*OFF*→[■]

Hold Image

Set the image to be sent out to the other party while placing an incoming call on hold or while holding the call you are making.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Video Call**

1 **Select *Hold Setting*→■→*Hold on Call*/*Hold Answer*→■**

Selecting from a Preinstalled Image

Select ***Preset***→■ (twice)

Selecting an Image from Data Folder/Memory Card

Select ***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→■→Select an image →■ (twice)

6 Digital TV

Digital TV

One Seg Digital TV Broadcasts

● **Terrestrial digital TV broadcasting for mobile devices.**

Terrestrial digital broadcasting in Japan divides each 6 MHz frequency band into 13 segments. 12 of the segments are used for household HDTV broadcasting and the remaining one segment (One Seg) is devoted to mobile devices.

With One Seg, receive TV and data broadcasts on your handset.

For more information on One Seg services, visit The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting Website:

http://www.dpa.or.jp (PC)

http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Mobile Site) Japanese Only

Tip

- Terrestrial digital and One Seg broadcasting uses terrestrial UHF band waves.
- One Seg is referred to in this manual as "Digital TV".

Precautions

- **Extend the TV rod antenna (page 6-3) when using the Digital TV.**
- **The TV rod antenna is for receiving digital television signals. You should leave it stowed in the handset whenever you are not watching the Digital TV (page 6-3).**
- Digital TV supports reception in Japan only. Other countries use different broadcast systems and frequencies, and so Digital TV reception is not possible outside of Japan.
- Never use the Digital TV while riding a bicycle or motorcycle, or while driving a car. Doing so can make it difficult to hear sounds around you, or the image or audio can distract you and create the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you when using the Digital TV. Be especially careful in the vicinity of railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- Digital TV images and/or audio can be affected if mail is received while you are using the Digital TV.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data stored or settings configured by you due to an accident, malfunction, or repair of handset. Also note that Digital TV information (data recorded from the Digital TV, TV links, etc.) saved on the handset cannot be transferred to another handset when replacing the current handset, including changing to another model and repair.
- You will not be able to watch Digital TV broadcasts if your handset does not have a USIM card installed or if your contract with SoftBank expires.
- Channels allocated for the Channel settings (page 6-5) are based on information available as of June 2007. Whenever there is a change in the regional broadcasting channels, use ***Scan*** to update the Channel setting.

Tip

- Digital TV is paused for incoming voice/video call. Operations when a message is received are in order of the Priority settings (page 11-15).

Broadcast Signals

Image/audio quality may be poor in the following areas due to inadequate signal reception.

- Areas far away from or extremely close to the broadcast source
- Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
- Inside of a moving train or car, underground, in a tunnel, etc.
- Near high-tension electrical wires, neon lighting, wireless stations, railway lines, highways, etc.
- Other areas where there is a large number of signal obstructions, or areas that are cut off from the signal

Battery Level

Use of the Digital TV is not possible when the battery level is at "▯" (Level 1), except during charging. The Digital TV will turn off automatically if the battery level drops to "▯" (Level 1) while you are using it.

About Charging

You can use the Digital TV while charging the battery.

- Watching or recording Digital TV while charging can cause longer charging time or unfinished charging.
- Locating the AC Charger cord too close to the TV rod antenna while charging can cause interference with the Digital TV image.

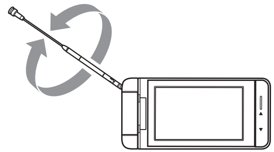
Extending/Retracting TV Rod Antenna

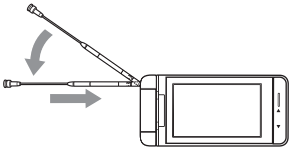
Extending TV Rod Antenna

Pull and fully extend the antenna. Rotate it to adjust signal reception.

Retracting TV Rod Antenna

Return the antenna to horizontal position, then gently push in.



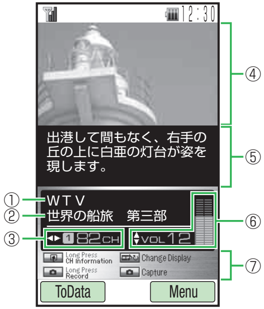


Note

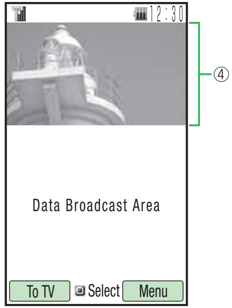
- Never try to adjust the angle or apply excessive force by holding the tip of the TV rod antenna. Doing so can cause the TV rod antenna to bend.
- When using the TV rod antenna, extend it as far as it will go. Note, however, that the best image and audio reception may be possible with the TV rod antenna stowed inside the handset if you are very close to the source of the broadcast.

Windows

Starting up the Digital TV displays the TV screen in data broadcast mode. Digital TV is displayed in full screen view when started from Viewer position (page 1-13).



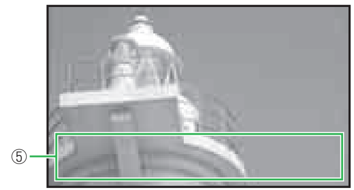
Portrait View
(Image Mode)



Portrait View
(Data Broadcast Mode)



Landscape View*



Full Screen View

①Station Name
②Program Name
③Channel Number
④Picture
⑤Subtitle
⑥Volume
⑦Key Guide

* Clamshell Open position (page 1-13). Key guide differs in Viewer position.

Setup & Watching TV

Configuring Channel Settings

Because the channels that can be received depend on your location, the first thing you should do before using the TV is to configure its reception channel settings.

Main menu ▶ TV

1 Select *Watch TV*→■ (twice)

2 Select *Manual*→■

Configuring Channel Settings Automatically

Select *Scan*→■

3 Select the area→■→Select the prefecture→■

- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select ***Hokkaido*** for the area, select a city.

Watching TV

Main menu ▶ TV

1 Select *Watch TV*→■

2 Select a channel

Selecting a Channel Directly with the Keypad

Use keys 0 to 9, * and # to select a channel.

- Select channel 10 by pressing *, channel 11 by 0, and channel 12 by #.
- Direct channel selection cannot be used when keypad operations are used by the data broadcaster while viewing in data broadcast mode.

Changing Channels Manually

Press ▪□/□▪

- Use TouchSwitch keys ◀/▶ in Viewer position.

Searching Automatically for Receivable Channels (Channel Search)

Press and hold ▪□/□▪

Selecting a Channel from the Channel List

Press Y! (Menu)→***Settings***→■→***Set Channels***→■→ ✉ (Detail)→Select the channel→■

3 To exit Digital TV, press POWER/クリア/メモ→*YES*→■

- Pressing クリア/メモ while watching in data broadcast mode will not exit Digital TV.

Note

- Do not remove the battery pack while the Digital TV is in operation. Doing so can cause the ***Set Channels*** (page 6-12), broadcast memory (page 6-14), ***TV Links*** (page 6-9), and other data to become corrupted or deleted.

Tip

- Press and hold in Standby to view Digital TV.
- Connect Earphone-Microphone and Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) to listen to Digital TV audio wirelessly. Note, however, some Bluetooth® Stereo Headsets may not support Digital TV audio output, even though they work when playing music and movie files.
- Press (Menu) while watching Digital TV to perform the following: ***Record*** (page 6-9)/***Capture*** (page 6-12)/***Subtitles*** (page 6-7)/***Switch Audio*** (page 6-8)/***Program Guide*** (page 6-7)/***TV Links*** (page 6-9)/***Settings*** (page 6-12)/***Key Guide***

Operations While Viewing TV

Function	Operation (Image Mode/Landscape View/ Full Screen View)	Operation (Data Broadcast Mode)
Adjusting volume	Press / or /	Press /
Image mode/data broadcast mode screen switching	Press (ToData)*[1]*[2]	Press (To TV)
Portrait view/landscape view/ full screen view switching	Press or	Press or
Data broadcast full screen switching	—	Press and hold
Displaying the on-screen display (OSD function)*[3]	Press and hold *[1]	Press and hold *[4]
Toggle captions ON/OFF	Press and hold	Press and hold *[4]
Recording a program	Press and hold	Press and hold *[4]
Capturing an image	Press	Press *[4]
Moving the cursor	—	Press /

*[1] This operation is possible in Clamshell Open position only.
*[2] Display switches to portrait view in Clamshell Open position.
*[3] While viewing the Digital TV, you can display the program title, station name, remote control number/channel, and broadcast signal strength.
*[4] This operation is not possible during full screen display of a data broadcast.

Tip

- While Earphone-Microphone and Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) are connected, use Volume Keys (+)/(–) to adjust the volume and Skip Keys (Next)/(Previous) to change channels (page 8-6).

Setting Digital TV Lock

Disable key operations in Viewer position when Digital TV is activated. "HOLD" appears when setting is active (except in full screen view).

1 When Digital TV is activated, press and hold HOLD in Viewer position

- Press and hold HOLD in Viewer position to cancel the lock.

Tip

- Digital TV Lock is temporarily released when the handset is changed to Clamshell Open position. Returning to Viewer position sets the lock to on again.

Using the Program Guide

The Electronic Program Guide (EPG) S! Appli lets you select a program and activate the Digital TV.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 Select *Program Guide*→●

The program guide appears. For details about the procedure, see the program guide help.

Setting Subtitles and Audio

Setting Subtitles

Set whether subtitles should appear when viewing the Digital TV.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 Select *Watch TV*→●

2 Press Y! (Menu)→*Subtitles*→●

3 Select *ON*/*OFF*→●

Setting Audio

Select the audio channel for output while viewing the Digital TV.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** [Y'] **(Menu)**→***Switch Audio***→■

3 **Select** ***Main/Sub***→■

Configuring the Audio Output Destination

Main menu ▶ **TV** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Output Settings***→■

2 **Select** ***Speaker/Earphone*** **or** ***Wireless***→■

- When ***Wireless*** is selected, select a wireless device from among the registered devices (page 10-7). See page 8-6 for information about using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional).

Setting Digital TV Image Quality

Main menu ▶ **TV** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Image Quality***→■

2 **Select** ***Fine/Normal/Cinema***→■

Using the Data Broadcast Mode

In addition to images and audio, you can view data broadcast with the Digital TV. Access a variety of information including still images and video clips relating to the program.

1 **On the Digital TV viewing screen, press** [✉] **(ToData)**

This switches to the data broadcast mode.

- Pressing [✉] (To TV) returns to the image mode.

Note

- Receiving data broadcasts does not incur connection fees. However, you will be charged if you utilize a service that uses the Internet.

Tip

- Broadcast data cannot be displayed on a landscape view screen.
- Press and hold [文字] while in the data broadcast mode to display a data broadcast in full screen. To return to the previous view, press and hold [文字] again.

Using TV Links

Save TV links to access data broadcast memo information and related websites. After you save a TV link, you can use it to display memo information or related information by connecting to the Internet.

Registering a TV Link

You can save up to 50 TV links.

1 In data broadcast mode (page 6-8), select items such as *テレビリンク登録* (Save TV Links)→■

- The actual procedure depends on the program. For details, see the information within the data broadcast.

Displaying Memo Information or a Website from a TV Link

●About TV Link List Icons

The following icons appear to indicate the TV link type.

TV Link (Valid/Expired)	Description
Memo Information (/)	Data broadcast information
Link communication contents (/)	Connection to data broadcast site
Mobile contents (/)	Connection to mobile site
PC contents (/)	Connection to PC site

Main menu ▶ TV

1 Select *TV Links*→■→Select a TV link→■

- For some TV links, an Internet connection confirmation window will appear. If you select ***Ask Once Only***, the confirmation window will not be displayed from the next time.

Tip

- If validity period of TV link has expired, a prompt will ask if you wish to delete the link. If ***YES*** is selected, link will be deleted.
- Press [Y!] (Menu) while a TV link is selected to perform the following: ***Delete*/*Delete All*/*Change Order***

Recording and Playing Back a Program

Recording a Program

You can record a program as you watch it. In addition to images and audio, you also can record subtitle and data broadcast information.

- Record up to ten hours per recording.

Main menu ▶ TV

1 Select *Watch TV*→■→Display the program

- For information about changing the channel, see page 6-5.

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Record*→[●]

Program recording starts.

3 Press [●]/[◘]→*YES*→[●]

Recording stops and the recorded program is saved to the storage location specified by ***File Storage*** (page 6-12).

Note

- Except for your own personal enjoyment, any use of recordings made by you that infringes upon the copyrights of copyright holders is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to record certain programs.

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold [◘] to record a program as you watch it.
- Regardless of the screen view you are using to view a program, the recording size is always W320 x H240 or W320 x H180.
- Recording is terminated and saved to Data Folder when:
  - · Voice/video call or Circle Talk call is received
  - · Battery reaches Level 1 ( )
  - · Data Folder becomes full
  - · Recording time exceeds ten hours
- Press [Y!] (Menu) while recording a program to perform the following: ***Subtitles*** (page 6-7)/***Switch Audio*** (page 6-8)/***Brightness*** (page 6-12)/***Key Guide***

Playing Back a Recorded Program

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 Select *TV Player*→[●]→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[●]

2 Select the program to be played back→[●]

Tip

- You also can play back a recorded program by the following operation. Main menu → ***Data Folder*** → ***TV*** → Select the program to be played back
- Press [Y!] (Menu) while playing back a program to perform the following: ***Subtitles*** (page 6-7)/***Switch Audio*** (page 6-8)/***Settings*** (page 6-12)/ ***Key Guide***

Operations Available in Playback

Function	Operation (Image Mode/Landscape View/ Full Screen View)	Operation (Data Broadcast Mode)
Fast forward	Press TouchSwitch ◀ *1 or ▢■ *2	Press TouchSwitch ◀ *1 or ▢■ *2*3
Rewind	Press TouchSwitch ▶ *1 or ■▢ *2	Press TouchSwitch ▶ *1 or ■▢ *2*3
High-speed fast forward	During fast forward, press TouchSwitch ◀ *1 or ▢■ *2*4	During fast forward, press TouchSwitch ◀ *1 or ▢■ *2*3*4
High-speed rewind	During rewind, press TouchSwitch ▶ *1 or ■▢ *2*4	During rewind, press TouchSwitch ▶ *1 or ■▢ *2*3*4
Frame advance	Press TouchSwitch ◀ *1 or ▢■ *5	—
Frame back	Press TouchSwitch ▶ *1 or ■▢ *5	—
Adjusting volume	Press ▢/▢ or ▢/▢	Press ▢/▢
Image mode/data broadcast mode screen switching	Press ✉ (ToData)*2*6	Press ✉ (To TV)*2
Portrait view/landscape view/ full screen view switching	Press ▢ or ▢ *2	Press ▢ or ▢ *2
Data broadcast full screen switching	—	Press and hold ▢ *2
Displaying the on-screen display (OSD function)*7	Press and hold ▢ *6	Press and hold ▢ *2*8
Toggle captions ON/OFF	Press and hold ▢	Press and hold ▢ *8
Moving the cursor	—	Press ▢/▢

*1 Available in Viewer position only.

*2 During playback only.

*3 Temporarily switches to image mode during fast forward/rewind and returns to data broadcast mode during normal playback.

*4 Return to normal playback by pressing TouchSwitch ◀ or ▢■ during high-speed fast forward and pressing TouchSwitch ▶ or ■▢ during high-speed rewind. Pressing TouchSwitch ▶ or ■▢ during high-speed fast forward switches to rewind; and pressing TouchSwitch ◀ or ▢■ during high-speed rewind switches to fast forward.

*5 Only when playback is paused.

*6 This operation is possible in Clamshell Open position only.

*7 This function displays the program playback status and station name during program playback or while playback is paused.

*8 This operation is not possible during full screen display of a data broadcast.

Setting the Storage Location for Recorded Programs

Main menu ▶ **TV** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***File Storage***→■→***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→■

Tip

- Alternatively, press ✉ (Menu)→***Settings***→***File Storage*** while viewing a program.

Capturing an Image

Capture a scene while viewing programs.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■→**Display the program**

- For information about changing the channel, see page 6-5.

2 **Press** ✉ **(Menu)**→***Capture***→■→***YES***→■

Captured images are saved to the ***Pictures*** folder in the handset Data Folder.

Note

- Captured images can only be used for personal use. Use that constitutes copyright infringement is prohibited.
- Due to copyright restrictions, you may not be able to capture images from certain programs.

Tip

- You cannot capture images during recording.
- Regardless of the screen view you are using to view a program, the captured image size is always W320 x H240 or W320 x H180.

Configuring Digital TV Settings

Setting Digital TV Backlight

Set the brightness of the Digital TV backlight.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** ✉ **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Brightness***→■

3 **Select a brightness level**→■

Configuring Channel Settings

Set up a channel list of channels you want to view, and add channel lists. Up to three channel lists can be set up at the same time.

Setting Up and Adding Channel Lists

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** [Y!] **(Menu)→***Settings***→**[■]**→***Set Channels* **→**[■]

3 **Select** *Empty***→**[■]**→***Manual***→**[■]

Configuring Channel Settings Automatically

Select *Scan* → [■]

4 **Select the area→**[■]**→Select the prefecture→**[■]

- For some prefectures, select a regional subdivision as well. If you select *Hokkaido* for the area, select a city.

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) while a previously set channel list is selected to perform the following:
  Rename/*Delete*

Selecting a Channel List for Viewing

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** *Watch TV***→**[■]

2 **Press** [Y!] **(Menu)→***Settings***→**[■]**→***Set Channels* **→**[■]

3 **Select a channel list→**[■]

Data Broadcast Settings

Setting Data Communication Confirmation Window

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever a connection is established for data communication.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** *Watch TV***→**[■]

2 **Press** [Y!] **(Menu)→***Settings***→**[■]**→***Datacasting* **→**[■]

3 **Select** *Start Comm.***→**[■]**→***Ask before*/*Do not Ask* **→**[■]

Setting Secure Connection Confirmation Window

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever data communication that uses encryption, a digital signature, or some other security function is performed over a secure connection (SSL).

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** *Watch TV***→**[■]

2 **Press** [Y!] **(Menu)→***Settings***→**[■]**→***Datacasting***→**[■]

3 **Select** *Go to Secured***→**[■]**→***Ask before*/*Do not Ask* **→**[■]

Setting Memory Access Confirmation Window

Specify whether a confirmation window appears whenever Digital TV broadcast memory is accessed.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1. **Select** ***Watch TV***→■
2. **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Datacasting***→■
3. **Select** ***Access Memory***→■→***Ask before/Do not Ask***→■

Deleting Broadcast Memory Contents

Use the following procedure to delete broadcast information stored in the handset through data broadcast.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1. **Select** ***Watch TV***→■
2. **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Datacasting***→■
3. **Select** ***Clear Memory***→■

Deleting a Specific Station Memory

Select a station→Y! (Menu)→***Clear***→■→***YES***→■

Deleting All Station Memories

Press Y! (Menu)→***Clear All***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Deleting a Single Station Memory

Select a station→■→Select a memory→Y! (Menu)→***Clear***→■→***YES***→■

Deleting All Memories of a Station

Select a station→■→Y! (Menu)→***Clear All***→■→ Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Location Information Send Settings

Specify whether location information should be sent automatically when there is a location information request when using data broadcasting.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1. **Select** ***Watch TV***→■
2. **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Datacasting***→■
3. **Select** ***Send Location***→■

Display the Confirmation Window Each Time

Select ***Always Ask***→■

Send Location Information without Displaying the Confirmation Window

Select ***Send***→■

Do not Send Location Information without Displaying the Confirmation Window

Select ***Do not Send***→■

Note

- Positioning cannot be done when Positioning Lock (page 19-5) is set. When sending location information, select ***OFF*** for the Positioning Lock.
- Even if ***Always Ask*** or ***Send*** is specified for location information send settings, location information is not sent if ***Do not Send*** is selected for S! GPS Navi location information send settings (page 19-6).

Setting the Manufacture Number

Specify whether your manufacture number (IMEI) is sent automatically as a user ID when you use a data broadcast or packet transmission.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Datacasting***→■

3 **Select** ***Manufacture #***→■→***Send*****/*****Do not Send***→■

Setting the Content Storage Location

Specify the storage location of contents obtained while using a data broadcast.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Datacasting***→■

3 **Select** ***Storage***→■→***Phone Memory*****/*****Memory Card***→■

Setting the Off-Timer

Set the Digital TV to end automatically after a preset amount of time expires.

Main menu ▶ **TV**

1 **Select** ***Watch TV***→■

2 **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Settings***→■→***Off-timer***→■→***30 minutes*****/*****60 minutes*****/*****120 minutes*****/*****OFF***→■

Tip

- Recording continues even when the preset time of off-timer expires. The Digital TV will end after recording is completed.

7 Camera

About the Camera

The handset is equipped with a 3.24 million effective pixel camera that has auto focus and digital zoom. Use the camera to take pictures and record videos.

- Operations are described in Clamshell Open position (page 1-13) unless otherwise noted.

Precautions

- Pictures are saved in JPEG format, and videos in MPEG-4 format.
- To avoid camera shake, hold the handset firmly, or set the image stabilizer function (page 7-11) to ***ON***.
- Fingerprints or grime may affect focus. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth.
- Do not block the lens with your finger or strap when taking pictures/ videos.

Tip

- Camera operations are paused when a voice/video call is received. ***Mid-operation*** settings (Priority, page 11-15) determine priority for incoming messages.
- If a voice/video call arrives while recording video, handset stops recording and the file is saved automatically. For incoming messages, priority is based on ***Video*** settings (Priority).

Display Positions

Use Display positions suited for each camera mode (page 7-8) or video mode (page 7-14). See page 1-13 for details on Display positions.

Clamshell Open Position

Use this position when shooting in ***Mobile***, ***Video Mail*** or ***Short Video*** modes.

Viewer Position

Use this position when shooting in ***Digital*** or ***Video*** mode.

Self-portrait Position

Used for Self-view mode (page 7-7).

Display

Using Windows

■**Viewfinder**

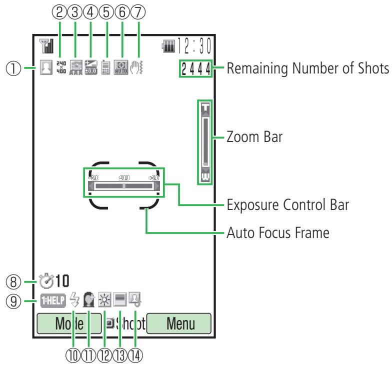
Frame and view images on Viewfinder when capturing still images or recording videos.

■**Preview Window**

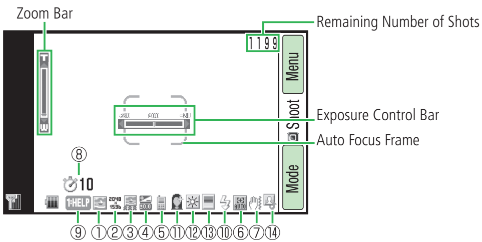
Check captured images/videos.

When shooting in ***Digital***/***Video*** mode, only Landscape View (pages 7-4, 7-5) is available.

Camera Indicators



Viewfinder*1



Viewfinder (Landscape View)*2

*1 In case of ***Mobile*** (page 7-8)

*2 Landscape View can be used with ***Digital*** (page 7-8) only.

①Camera Mode/Multi Shots

- Digital
- Mobile
- Scan Data
- Multi Shots (High Speed)
- Multi Shots (Normal Speed)
- Multi Shots (Low Speed)

②Picture Size

- W2048 × H1536
- W2048 × H1232
- W1600 × H1200
- W1280 × H960
- W640 × H480
- W400 × H240
- W240 × H400
- W240 × H320
- W144 × H176
- W120 × H160
- W112 × H112
- W96 × H128

③Quality

- Fine
- Normal
- Economy

④Exposure

… … −2.0…± 0… +2.0

⑤Storage

- Phone Memory
- Memory Card

⑥Focus Mode

- Auto
- Macro
- Infinity

⑦Resist Shake

- Resist Shake ON

⑧Delay Timer

- 05 5 sec
- 10 10 sec
- 20 20 sec

⑨Key Guide Display

- 1:HELP Key Guide Display

⑩Mobile Light

- Mobile Light On

⑪**Brush Up**

Brush Up On

⑫**White Balance**

Daylight
Cloudy
Fluor (Day)
Fluor (Wht)
Tungsten

⑬**Color Control**

Intense
Soft

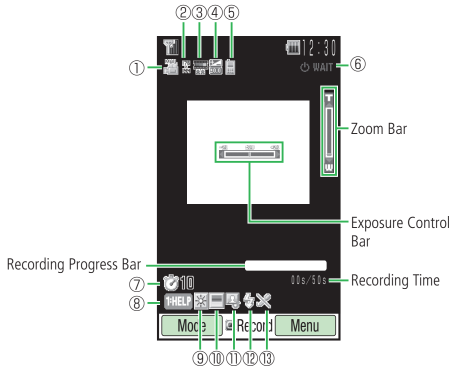
Picture Mode

Bright
Redness
Night
Sensitive
Character

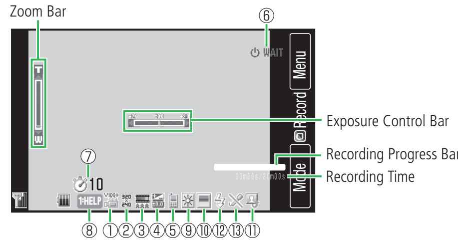
⑭**Self-view**

Self-view On

Video Camera Indicators



Viewfinder*1



Viewfinder (Landscape View)*2

*1 In case of ***Video Mail*** (page 7-14)

*2 Landscape View can be used with ***Video*** (page 7-14) only.

①**Video Mode**

Video On
Short Video On
Video Mail On

②**Image Size**

Video (W320 × H240)
Video Mail (W176 × H144)
Short Video (W128 × H96)

③**Quality**

Fine
Normal
Economy

④**Exposure**

… … −2.0…± 0… +2.0

⑤**Storage**

Phone Memory
Memory Card

⑥**Status**

WAIT	Standby	STOP	Stopped
REC	Recording	FWD	Forward
PLAY	Playing	REV	Rewind
PAUSE	Paused	SLOW	Slow Playback

⑦**Delay Timer**

05 5 sec   10 10 sec   20 20 sec

⑧**Key Guide Display**

1:HELP Key Guide Display

⑨**White Balance**

Daylight	Fluor (Wht)
Cloudy	Tungsten
Fluor (Day)	

⑩**Color Control**

Intense   Soft

⑪**Self-view**

Self-view On

⑫**Mobile Light**

Mobile Light On

⑬**Voice Record**

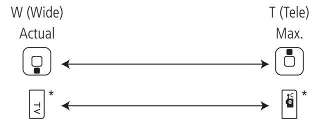
Voice Record Off

Common Operations on Viewfinder

Adjusting Zoom

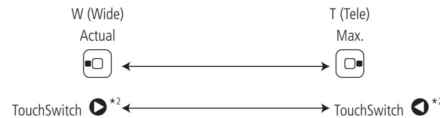
Zoom adjustment varies by Display position, camera mode and video mode. See pages 7-8 and 7-14 for information about the zoom rate in each camera mode and video mode.

■Mobile/Video Mail/Short Video



* Also available in Viewer position

■Digital*1/Video



*1 Zoom is unavailable when Picture Size is set to ***W2048 × H1232*** or larger.

*2 Available in Viewer position only

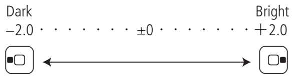
Note

- Zoom is unavailable while the delay timer (page 7-21) is set.
- Increasing zoom, lowers image quality.

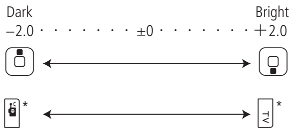
Exposure Control

Use the following operations to adjust the brightness depending on the camera/video mode or the position of the handset.

■Mobile/Video Mail/Short Video



■Digital/Video



* Also available in Viewer position

Tip

- Depending on the environment, e.g. under fluorescent light, a striped pattern may appear on the image, which can be reduced by adjusting the brightness.

Mobile Light

Press ✱ to turn on/off the mobile light. When the mobile light is turned on, "" appears on the viewfinder.

Using Key Guide Display

Press 1 to display key operations on the viewfinder. To exit the key guide display, press 1 again.

Using Self-view

Set the self-view mode, and you can take a picture of yourself as if you were looking into a mirror. Press # to turn on/off the self-view mode. When the self-view mode is set to ***ON***, turn the handset in Self-portrait position (page 1-13). "" appears on the viewfinder.

Pictures

Settings for Frame, Delay Timer, Shutter Sound, effects, etc. can be made. The pictures are saved to the handset (Data Folder) or memory card in JPEG format (popular format for saving images to a PC). Also edit the pictures using Edit Picture (page 7-25) or take pictures of faces (page 7-10) to use them in Phone Book.

Camera Modes

There are two modes for taking pictures: ***Mobile*** and ***Digital***.

■**Mobile**

Take a picture to set as wallpaper, etc.

■**Digital**

Take a high-quality picture to display on an external device such as PC.

Mode	Picture Size	Max. Zoom
Mobile	W240 × H400	Approx. 5.1×
	W240 × H320	Approx. 6.4×
	W144 × H176	Approx. 10.7×
	W120 × H160	Approx. 12.8×
	W112 × H112	Approx. 12.8×
	W96 × H128	Approx. 16×
Digital	W2048 × H1536	–
	W2048 × H1232	–
	W1600 × H1200	Approx. 1.3×
	W1280 × H960	Approx. 1.6×
	W640 × H480	Approx. 3.2×
	W400 × H240	Approx. 5.1×

Focus Modes for Taking Pictures

Select the focus mode (page 7-11) in accordance with the type of subject you are shooting.

■**Auto**

Take pictures using Auto Focus. Camera automatically adjusts focus when the subject is in the center of viewfinder. When the subject is not in the center; frame the subject in center of the viewfinder, lock focus then move the camera to compose the image (page 7-10).

■Macro

Use this mode for nearby subjects. ***Macro*** is selected automatically whenever ***Character*** is selected for the picture mode (page 7-12).

■Infinity

Use this mode to shoot scenery. Auto Focus is unavailable in this mode. ***Infinity*** is selected automatically whenever ***Night*** is selected for the picture mode (page 7-12).

Tip

- Auto Focus may not properly function if: the subject is moving, the subject's distance is out of focus range, or lighting condition is poor.

Taking a Picture

- Auto Focus Lock is available when the focus mode is set to ***Auto***. For details, see "Using Auto Focus Lock" (page 7-10).

Main menu ▶ **Camera**

1 Select *Mobile*/*Digital*→■

2 Frame the subject on Main Display→■/▣

The shutter clicks, and the preview window appears.

3 Press ■

If Storage (page 7-21) is set to ***Phone Memory***, the picture is saved to ***Pictures*** in Data Folder (page 9-2), and the viewfinder reappears. If it is set to ***Memory Card***, a picture taken in ***Mobile*** is saved to ***Pictures***, one taken in ***Digital*** to ***Digital Camera***, and the viewfinder reappears.

Note

- Capturing images in low-lighting may compromise image quality. Capture images in adequate lighting or use Mobile Light.

Tip

- Pressing ▣ in Standby also displays the viewfinder.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the viewfinder is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the viewfinder, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
  Picture Size*/*Data Folder*/*Brush Up*/*Resist Shake*/*Self-view*/*Picture Mode*/*Multi Shots*/*Add Frame*/*Icons Display*/*Save Settings*/*Picture*/*Function
- After capturing an image, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the mode, some items may not appear):
  Send via*/*ScreenDisplay*/*Zoom*/*To Phone Book*/*Edit Picture*/*Storage
- The storage location can be changed (page 7-21). You can also change the folder for pictures taken in ***Mobile*** (page 7-8) or pictures taken in ***Digital*** (page 7-8) whose storage location is set to the handset.

Using Auto Focus Lock

When the subject is not in the center of the viewfinder, camera cannot focus on the subject. Lock the focus on the subject then frame the image.

● The focus mode setting (page 7-11) must be ***Auto*** in order to use Auto Focus Lock.

Main menu ▶ **Camera**

1 Select *Mobile/Digital*→ [■]

2 Position subject in center of Main Display→Half press [camera key] or press [key]

The Focus frame turns green when subject is in focus.

● Focus frame turns red when focus has failed.

● Half press [camera key] or press [key] again to re-focus the subject.

3 Re-compose the image→Press [■]/[camera key] completely →[■]

Taking a Picture for Phone Book Entry

Take a photo and save the image to a Phone Book entry (page 4-3). Prior to capturing the image, set Picture Size to ***W112 × H112*** (page 7-19) and Activate Mobile camera (page 7-8).

1 Activate Mobile camera and press [Y!] (Menu) →*To Phone Book*→[■]

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Picture

Select ***Add New***→[■]→Create a Phone Book entry

Adding a Picture to Phone Book Entry

Select ***Add***→[■]→Select a Phone Book entry→[■]→Edit Phone Book entry

● If the selected Phone Book entry contains a picture, select ***YES*** and press [✉] (OK) to change the picture.

● For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

Functions for Taking Pictures

Setting Camera Modes

When the camera mode is set, "[icon]"(Digital) or "[icon]"(Mobile) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate camera and press [Mode key] (Mode)

Taking a Picture to Set as Wallpaper, etc.

Select ***Mobile*** → [■]

Taking a High-quality Picture

Select ***Digital***→ [■]

Tip

- For details on changing the picture size in ***Digital*** and ***Mobile***, see page 7-19.

Setting Focus Mode

The currently selected focus mode is indicated on the viewfinder as "[icon]" (Auto), "[icon]" (Macro), or "[icon]" (Infinity).

1 Activate camera and press [Menu key] (Menu)→*Function*→ [■]→*Focus Mode*→ [■]

2 Select a focus mode→ [■]

Tip

- The focus mode returns to ***Auto*** whenever the camera mode is exited.

Setting Image Stabilization

Image stabilization lets you suppress the effects of hand movement when taking pictures.

1 Activate camera and press [Menu key] (Menu)→*Resist Shake*→ [■]

2 Select *ON/OFF*→ [■]

Note

- Image stabilization cannot be used while a picture mode (page 7-12) is set.
- Image stabilization may not be effective if hand movement or subject movement is extreme.
- Taking a picture with image stabilization indoors or in other areas where lighting is insufficient can result in an overall graininess in the picture or a picture that looks like it is low resolution.

Tip

- While in Viewer position, press and hold [HOLD key] to turn image stabilization on or off.

Setting Picture Mode

Select a picture mode that suits the type of picture you want to take. The currently selected picture mode is indicated on the viewfinder as "" (Bright), "" (Redness), "" (Night), "" (Sensitive), or "ABC" (Character).

Picture Mode Setting	Description
Bright	Emphasizes beautiful white skin tones
Redness	Take pictures with healthy skin tones
Night	Mode for taking night scene pictures
Sensitive	Mode for taking bright pictures in dark locations
Character	Mode for taking character pictures
OFF	Turns off picture mode settings

1 Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Picture Mode*→■

2 Select a picture mode→■

Note

- The picture mode cannot be set while using Multi Shots (page 7-13).
- If image stabilization (page 7-11) is set to ***ON***, the setting is disabled while Picture Mode is active. Picture Mode returns to ***OFF*** when camera ends and image stabilization setting returns.

Tip

- The picture mode returns to ***OFF*** whenever the camera mode is exited.
- When the picture mode is set to ***Character***, the focus mode is automatically set to ***Macro*** and when the picture mode is set to ***Night***, the focus mode is automatically set to ***Infinity.***

Setting Brush Up Mode

Use Brush Up mode to give skin tone a more natural effect when photographing people. "" appears on the viewfinder in Brush Up mode.

1 Activate camera and press→ (Menu) →*Brush Up*→■

2 Select *ON*/*OFF*→■

Note

- Brush Up mode cannot be used when the camera mode (page 7-8) is set to ***Digital*** with the image size ***W2048 × H1536*** or ***W2048 × H1232***.

Tip

- Brush Up mode, even when set to ***ON***, may not be effective if the entire face is not within the viewfinder, for profiles, or on facial shots taken at an angle.
- Brush Up mode can be set separately for ***Digital*** and ***Mobile***.
- Depending on the image size, skin tone adjustment may not be immediate in ***Digital*** mode (page 7-8).

Multi Shots

Take nine pictures in succession. When Multi Shots is set to on, "[icon]"(High Speed), "[icon]"(Normal Speed) or "[icon]"(Low Speed) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate camera and press [Y!] (Menu) →*Multi Shots*→[■]

2 Select a speed→[■]

Note

- Multi Shots is unavailable in ***Digital*** mode (page 7-8).
- Any of the picture modes (page 7-12) cannot be used during Multi Shots.

Tip

- Nine pictures are taken in about two seconds (High Speed), three seconds (Normal Speed) or four seconds (Low Speed).
- Multi Shots is set to ***OFF*** when you stop using the camera or change the camera mode.

Frame Setting

Select a frame before you take a picture. There are ten types of frames in the handset Data Folder.

1 Activate camera and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add Frame* →[■]

2 Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[■]→*Pictures* →[■]→Select a frame→[■] (twice)

Releasing a Frame

Select ***OFF***→[■]

Note

- Frames are unavailable in ***Digital*** mode (page 7-8).

Tip

- On the frame preview window, you can press [*], [#], [■▢] or [▢■] to change frames.
- The frame setting is set to ***OFF*** when you stop using the camera or change the camera mode.

Videos

Recorded videos are saved to the handset (Data Folder) or memory card in MPEG-4 format (popular format for saving data to a mobile phone).

- MPEG-4 formatted files (.3G2) recorded in ***Video*** or stored in Data Folder cannot be attached to a message or sent via infrared/Bluetooth® communication. The files cannot be set as a ringtone pattern or alarm tone.
- ***MPEG4*** or ***H.263*** can be selected as a file format in ***Video Mail***. ***MPEG4*** is a format broadly used on SoftBank mobile phones. ***H.263*** is usually used on foreign mobile phones. If a video cannot be played on the recipient's phone, change the file format and try recording again.

Video Modes

There are three modes for recording videos: ***Video***, ***Video Mail*** and ***Short Video***.

■Video

Record a video for a long time.

■Video Mail

Record a video to attach to a message.

■Short Video

Record a video to attach to a message and send to an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank mobile phone (PDC).

Mode	Size	Max. Zoom	Max. Recording Time
Video	W320 × H240	Approx. 3.2×	Approx. 20 min.
Video Mail	W176 × H144	Approx. 3.2×	Approx. 30 sec. (Quality: Fine) Approx. 50 sec. (Quality: Normal) Approx. 60 sec. (Quality: Economy)
Short Video	W128 × H96	Approx. 5.3×	Approx. 5 sec.

Recording a Video

Recorded videos are automatically saved to the ***Videos*** folder in the ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***.

Main menu ▶ **Camera**

1 Select *Video/Video Mail/Short Video*→[■]

2 Frame the subject on Main Display→[■]/[▷]

The start sound is heard and recording begins.

- In ***Video*** mode (page 7-14), press [✉] (Pause) to pause then [✉] (Record) to resume recording.

3 Press [■]/[▷]

End tone sounds, recording is automatically saved and the first frame of the recording appears.

4 Press [■]

When recording in ***Video Mail/Short Video*** mode with Auto Save turned ***ON*** (page 7-21), the video is saved automatically to the location specified by ***Storage*** (page 7-21) and then the viewfinder reappears.

Tip

- Press and hold [▷] in Standby also displays the viewfinder.
- The recording time displayed during recording is only intended as an approximate guide.
- If you do not operate the handset for 90 seconds or so while the viewfinder is displayed, the window returns to Standby.
- On the viewfinder, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Data Folder/My Videos/Self-view/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/Voice Record/Save Settings/Movie/Function
- After recording a video, press [Y!] (Menu) from the preview window to access the following:
  Play/Send via/Delete/ScreenDisplay/Icons Display/To Phone Book/Storage
- Forward/Rewind and Slow playback can be performed on the preview window.
  Forward/Rewind: Press and hold [◀▶] during playback
  (In ***Video*** mode, press and hold [▲▼] during playback)
  Slow playback: Press and hold [▶] while playback is paused
  (In ***Video*** mode, press and hold [▼] while playback is paused)
- While the recording is paused, the recording can be ended (video saved) or stopped.
  Recording end (save): Press [■]
  Recording stop: Press [Y!] (Cancel)
- The storage location and folder can be changed (page 7-21).

Deleting a Video

Delete a video displayed on the preview window.

1 On the preview window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Delete* →[■]→*YES*→[■]

Setting Video as a Ringtone Pattern

A video recorded in ***Video Mail*** or ***Short Video*** can be set as a ringtone pattern (page 4-4) for voice calls.

1 On the preview window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*To Phone Book*→[■]

Creating a New Phone Book Entry with a Ringtone Pattern

Select ***Add New***→[■]→Create a contact

Adding a Ringtone Pattern to Phone Book Entry

Select ***Add***→[■]→Select a Phone Book entry→[■]→Edit Phone Book entry

- If the selected Phone Book entry contains a ringtone pattern, select ***YES*** and press [✉] (OK) to change the ringtone pattern.
- For details on saving a Phone Book entry, see page 4-3.

Functions for Recording Videos

Setting Video Modes

When Video Mode is set, "[VIDEO]"(Video), "[MAIL]"(Video Mail) or "[SHORT]"(Short Video) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate video and press [✉] (Mode)

Recording a Video for a Long Time (up to 20 minutes)

Select ***Video***→[■]

Recording a Video to Attach to a Message

Select ***Video Mail***→[■]

Recording a Video for an MPEG-4-compatible SoftBank Handset

Select ***Short Video***→[■]

Recording a Video without Sound

Record a video without sound. When Voice Record is set to ***OFF***, "[mic off]" appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate video and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Voice Record* →[■]

2 Select *OFF*→[■]

Tip

- Voice Record is set to ***ON*** when playing/recording is ended.

7 Camera

Setting the Video Compression Method

Set the compression method for videos recorded in ***Video Mail***.

1 Activate video and press (Menu)→*Movie*→●→*Encode*→●

2 Select *MPEG4*/*H. 263*→●

Tip

- The encoding setting is set to ***MPEG4*** when playback is ended or the video mode is changed.

QR Code

The Camera allows you to scan QR codes and save up to ten scanned data items. However, this number depends on the amount of available memory space. Connect to a URL included in the scanned information, create a message to send to an address included in the scanned information or save it to Phone Book.

Note

- The camera may not be able to scan a QR code that is dirty or in the dark.
- Some QR codes cannot be scanned depending on the size or version.

Tip

- When a QR code has been divided into data areas, you can scan up to 16 data areas consecutively, and they will be saved as a single QR code data.

Scanning a QR Code

Main menu ▶ Camera ▶ Scan Data

1 Select *Scan*→●

2 Frame a QR code on Main Display→●

- Use to adjust the exposure.
- When the QR code has been divided into data areas, select ***YES*** to scan the other data areas. When all the areas are scanned, the QR code data is displayed.

3 Press (Menu)→*Save*→●

Tip

- The following step can also activate the barcode reader:
  Main menu→***Tools***→***Useful Tools***→***Scan Data***
- If (Mode) is pressed on the scan QR code window, the camera mode can be changed.
- After scanning a code, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items differ depending on the QR code data):
  Go to/***To Locations***/***Save***/***Copy***/***To Message***

Tip

- Depending on the scanned data, press ■ to perform the following:

Data	Operation
Begins with MAILTO:	Send a message (pages 15-5, 15-10)
Begins with MEMORY:	Save to Phone Book (page 4-3)
Contains URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains Media Player URL	Access the URL and display the web page
Contains an email address	Send a message, save to Phone Book
Begins with TEL:	Make a call, send a message, save to Phone Book

Checking Scanned Data

Main menu ▶ **Camera** ▶ **Scan Data**

1 **Select *Scanned Data*→■**

2 **Select a QR code data→■**

Tip

- While a QR code data is selected, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
  Rename*/*Delete*/*Delete All

Using Location Information Contained in a QR Code

1 **Scan a QR code→Y! (Menu)**

Launching Navi Appli
Select ***Go To***→■→Launch Navi Appli
Saving a Scanned Data to the Location Memo List
Select ***To Locations***→■

Camera & Video Settings

Camera Settings

Image Quality

Set the image quality at which to save a picture (in JPEG format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "" (Fine), "" (Normal) or "" (Economy) appears on the viewfinder.

1 **Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Picture*→**

2 **Select *Quality*→→Select the quality→**

Picture Size

Picture Size is indicated by the icon (page 7-4).

1 **Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Picture Size* →**

2 **Select a picture size→**

● For details on picture sizes, see page 7-8.

Date Stamp

Add a date stamp to pictures.

1 **Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Picture*→**

2 **Select *Date Stamp*→→*ON*→**

3 **Select a date color→**

Note

● When the camera mode (page 7-8) is set to ***Digital*** or when Picture Size is set to ***W112 × H112*** in ***Mobile*** mode, date stamps cannot be added.

Displaying a Grid

Display horizontal and vertical gridlines on the viewfinder to use as a vertical and horizontal guide for taking pictures.

1 **Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Function* →**

2 **Select *Grid*→→*ON*/*OFF*→**

Shutter Sound

1 **Activate camera and press (Menu)→*Function* →**

2 **Select *Shutter Sound*→→*Pattern 1*/*Pattern 2*→**

Tip

- The shutter sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 11-2) is set.
- To check the shutter sound, press ✉ (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

Video Settings

Image Quality

Set the image quality at which to save a video (in MPEG-4 or H.263 format). The higher the quality, the lower the compression rate and the larger the file size. When the quality is set, "▦" (Fine), "▦" (Normal) or "▦" (Economy) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate video and press Y! (Menu)→*Movie*→■

2 Select *Quality*→■→Select the quality→■

Tip

- When video mode (page 7-14) is set to ***Short Video***, the video is recorded in ***Economy***.
- The maximum recording time varies depending on the image quality (page 7-14) .

Start & End Sounds

1 Activate video and press Y! (Menu)→*Function*→■

2 Select *Start/End*→■→*Pattern 1*/*Pattern 2*→■

Tip

- The start/end sound is heard even if the manner mode (page 11-2) is set.
- To check the start/end sound, press ✉ (Play) while the sound is highlighted.

Setting Full Screen for Videos

Set the video (excluding Video) size to the display width.

1 Activate video and press Y! (Menu)→*ScreenDisplay* →■

Preview Window

Set Preview to ***On*** to view video immediately after recording. Set to ***Off*** to return to recording mode. This feature is available only in ***Video*** mode (page 7-14).

1 Activate video and press Y! (Menu)→*Function*→ ■→*Preview*→■

2 Select *ON*/*OFF*→■

Camera & Video Settings

Auto Save

When Auto Save is set to ***ON***, images and recordings are automatically saved to the location specified by ***Storage*** (below), and the preview window does not appear.

1 Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Save Settings*→[●]→*Auto Save*→[●]

2 Select *ON*/*OFF*→[●]

Note

- Auto Save is unavailable in ***Video*** mode.

Changing Storage Location

The storage location for pictures and videos can be changed. When the storage location is set, " [Phone Memory icon] " (Phone Memory) or " [SD icon] " (Memory Card) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Save Settings*→[●]→*Storage*→[●]

2 Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[●]→Select a folder→[●]

Tip

- If the storage location is set to ***Memory Card*** and a picture is taken in ***Digital*** (page 7-8), the picture is saved to ***Digital Camera***.

Delay Timer

This feature allows you to take a picture or start recording after [●]/[side key] is pressed and a specified time elapses. When the delay timer is set, "[timer]20" (20 sec), "[timer]10" (10 sec) or "[timer]05" (5 sec) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Picture*/*Movie*→[●]

2 Select *Delay Timer*→[●]

3 Select seconds→[●]

Note

- Zoom (page 7-6) is unavailable when the delay timer is activated.

Tip

- Press [●] or [side key] to take a picture or start recording when the delay timer is activated.
- Press [Y!] (Cancel) or [クリア/メモ] to stop capturing or recording when the delay timer is activated.
- The delay timer is set to ***OFF*** when capturing or recording is finished.

White Balance

Under some conditions, the colors in pictures and videos may differ from the actual colors. If so, the white balance can be set so that the colors more closely resemble the actual colors. When the white balance is set, " " (Daylight), " " (Cloudy), " " (Fluor (Day)), " " (Fluor (Wht)) or " " (Tungsten) appears on the viewfinder.

7 Camera

1 Activate camera/video and press (Menu)→ *Picture/Movie*→■

2 Select *White Balance*→■

3 Select an item→■

Tip

- The white balance is set to ***Auto*** when you stop using the camera/video.

Color Control

When the color tone is set, " " (Intense) or " " (Soft) appears on the viewfinder.

1 Activate camera/video and press (Menu)→ *Picture/Movie*→■

2 Select *Color Control*→■

3 Select a color tone→■

Tip

- The color tone is set to ***Neutral*** when you stop using the camera/video.

Picture & Video Effects

Take sepia tone and monochrome pictures.

1 Activate camera/video and press (Menu)→ *Picture/Movie*→■→*Effects*→■

2 Select an effect→■

Tip

- The effect setting is set to ***OFF*** when you stop using the camera/video.

Display Indicators

Set display indicators on or off.

1 **Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→** ***Icons Display*** **→[■]**

Adjusting Flicker

E.g. under fluorescent light, you can set the frequency (Automatic/50Hz/60Hz) to reduce flicker.

1 **Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→** ***Function*** **→[■]**

2 **Select** ***Flicker*** **→[■]→** ***Automatic (Auto)/50 Hz/60 Hz*** **→[■]**

Setting the File Name

Select the file name, taken by the mode other than Digital, to be the date and time or "name of your choice + nnnn". In Digital, the name of a file saved to the handset will be the date and time, and the name of a file saved to the memory card will be "DCF_nnnn". nnnn is a number from 0001 to 9999.

1 **Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→** ***Save Settings*** **→[■]→** ***File Name*** **→[■]**

Setting the Name to the Date and Time

Select ***Date&Time***→[■]

Setting a Name to Your Choice

Select ***Define***→[■]→Enter a file name →[■]

Using Shortcuts

Enable or disable keypad shortcuts for camera or video functions.

1 **Activate camera/video and press [Y!] (Menu)→** ***Function*** **→[■]→** ***Key Shortcut*** **→[■]**

2 **Select** ***ON/OFF*** **→[■]**

Tip

- Use the following shortcuts to access functions in camera or video modes.

Key	Camera	Video
1 *1	Open Key Guide	
2	Toggle camera modes (Mobile and Digital modes)	
3	Toggle video modes (Video, Video Mail and Short Video modes)	
4	Switch to QR Code Scanner	
5	Adjust Picture Quality	
6	Image stabilization on/off	Adjust White Balance
7	Turn Brush Up on/off	Turn Microphone on/off
8	Toggle Picture Mode	Toggle Viewfinder Size *2
9	Toggle Picture Size	—
0	Icons on/off	
* *1	Turn Mobile Light on/off	
# *1	Switch to Self-view mode	

*1 Available even if the Key Shortcut is set to ***OFF***.

*2 Key operation is disabled in ***Video*** mode.

7 Camera

Preview Settings

To check a picture or video stored in Data Folder or memory card, select it from the viewfinder or Data Folder.

Previewing a Picture

Preview a picture stored in Data Folder when the camera is activated.

1 Activate camera and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Data Folder* →[■]

2 Select a picture→[■]

● To use the full screen, press [✉] (Full).

Tip

- When a picture is displayed, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
  Set as (page 9-4)/***Delete*/*Edit*/*Location*/*Send*/*Details***

Previewing a Video

Preview a video stored in Data Folder when the video is activated.

1 Activate video and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Data Folder*/*My Videos* →[■]

2 Select a video→[■]

● To display the key guide, press [1].

Tip

- When a video is played, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file type, some items may not appear):
  Set as (page 9-6)/***Delete*/*Mute*/*Unmute*/*Normal Screen*/*Full Screen*/*Hide Icons**/*Show Icons**/*Search Time*** (page 8-11)/***Send*/*Web Link*/*Display Link*/*Details***
  * Can only be selected in full screen mode.
- To adjust the volume during playback, use [◇]. When the volume is adjusted, the mute is automatically released.

Send Functions

If Auto Save (page 7-21) is set to ***OFF***, a picture or video can be sent immediately after it is taken or recorded.

Note

- Videos recorded in ***Video*** cannot be sent.

Sending via Mail

1 On the preview window, press ✉ (Mail)

- For details on creating S! Mail messages, see page 15-5.

Tip

- If the file size of a picture to be attached to a message exceeds the limit, a confirmation window appears. If ***Compress & Attach*** is selected, the size is compressed to 93 Kbytes or less and the picture is attached to a message. Compressed files have poor resolution.

Sending via Infrared/Bluetooth® Communication

1 On the preview window, press Y! (Menu)→ *Send via* →■

2 Select *Via Infrared/Via Bluetooth*→■

- For details on infrared communication, see page 10-3. For details on Bluetooth® communication, see page 10-8.

Editing a Picture

Images that have been captured and stored in Data Folder or memory card can be edited. The following types of files can be edited: JPEG files of 2.0 Mbytes or less, PNG files of 1 Mbyte or less. Images that are larger than W240 × H400 (W400 × H240) are reduced to W240 × H400. A picture that is smaller than W16 × H16 cannot be edited.

- If ***Overwrite*** is performed, the file cannot be restored to the original. To leave the original file, select ***Save as New***.
- If Data Folder is full, delete unnecessary files from Data Folder before editing a picture.

Changing the Picture Size

Change the picture size to ***W240 × H400***, ***W240 × H320***, ***W144 × H176***, ***W120 × H160***, ***W112 × H112***, ***W96 × H128*** or ***Define***.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 Select *Edit*→■→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→■→Select a picture→■

2 Press Y! (Menu)→*Picture Size*→■→Select a picture size→■

- After selecting the size, you can use ✥ to adjust the position of the picture to clip.

7 Camera

Adjusting to the Width or Height

Press ✉ (Resize)→***Fit to Width*/*Fit to Length***→●

Rotating the Picture

Press ✉ (Resize)→***Rotate Image***→●

3 Press Y! (Cut)→●→✉ (OK)→*Overwrite*/*Save as New*→●

Tip

- To customize picture size, select ***Define*** and enter picture size (W16 to 240 × H16 to 400).
- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ● and select the storage location.

Picture Effects

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Edit Picture

1 Select *Edit*→●→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→●→Select a picture→●

2 Press Y! (Menu)→*Effects*→●→Select effects→●

- Press ◐/◑ to change the effect level in ***Twinkle***, ***Whitening***, ***Change Color***, ***Shade Off***, ***Pinch*** and ***Brush Up***.

3 Press ●→✉ (OK)→*Overwrite*/*Save as New*→●

Tip

- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ● and select the storage location.

Adding a Frame

Select from ten preinstalled frames.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Edit Picture

1 Select *Edit*→●→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→●→Select a picture→●

2 Press Y! (Menu)→*Add Frame*→●

3 Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→●→*Pictures*→●→Select a frame→●

4 Press ●→✉ (OK)→*Overwrite*/*Save as New*→●

Tip

- After selecting a frame, you can press ✱ or # to change frames.
- If the size of a frame is smaller than that of the picture, you can use ✣ to adjust the position of the frame.
- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ● and select the storage location.

Adding a Stamp

Select from 15 preinstalled stamps.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Edit***→■→***Phone Memory*****/*****Memory Card***→■→**Select a picture**→■

2 **Press** ✉ **(Menu)**→***Add Stamp***→■

3 **Select** ***Phone Memory*****/*****Memory Card***→■→***Pictures***→■→**Select a stamp**→■ **(twice)**

4 **Press** ✉ **(OK)**→✉ **(OK)**→***Overwrite*****/*****Save as New***→■

Note

- If the size of a stamp is larger than that of the picture, the stamp cannot be added.

Tip

- After selecting a stamp, you can press * or # to change stamps.
- You can use ✥ to adjust the position of the stamp.
- To cancel an added stamp, press ✉ (Menu) and select ***Undo All***.
- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ■ and select the storage location.

Adding Text

Add text by selecting from five font sizes, nine font colors and frame colors.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Edit***→■→***Phone Memory*****/*****Memory Card***→■→**Select a picture**→■

2 **Press** ✉ **(Menu)**→***Add Text***→■

3 **Select a font size**→■→**Enter a text**→■

Changing a Font Color

Press ✉ (Color)→▲/▼→■

Changing a Frame Color

Press ✉ (Color)→◀/▶→■

4 **Press** ■ → ✉ **(OK)**→***Overwrite*****/*****Save as New***→■

Tip

- You can use ✥ to adjust the position of the text.
- The maximum number of characters that can be entered are 9 for Large and Medium, 12 for Medium-Small (Standard), 13 for Small and 20 for Extra-Small.
- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ■ and select the storage location.

Applying a Mosaic

Apply a mosaic to part of an image.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Edit***→■→***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→■→**Select a picture**→■

2 **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Mosaic***→■

3 **Press** ■ **(twice)**→✉ **(OK)**→***Overwrite*/*Save as New***→■

Tip

- Use ✣ to adjust the mosaic position.
- The size of the mosaic can be changed by pressing ✉ (Range) and then ✣. At this time move the frame by pressing ✉ (Move).
- After applying a mosaic, press ✣ and make fine adjustments to the mosaic.
- If you selected ***Save as New***, input the file name, press ■ and select the storage location.

Rotating a Picture

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Edit***→■→***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→■→**Select a picture**→■

2 **Press** Y! **(Menu)**→***Rotate Image***→■→✉ ( )/ Y! ( )→■

3 **Press** ✉ **(OK)**→***Overwrite*/*Save as New***→■

Tip

- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press ■ and select the storage location.

Compounding Pictures

Compound two pictures.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Edit***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→**Select a picture**→[■]

2 **Press** [Y!] **(Menu)**→***Overlay***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→**Select a picture**→[■]

Adjusting the Transparent Rate

Press [◂]/[▸]

3 **Press** [■]→[✉] **(OK)**→***Overwrite/Save as New***→[■]

Tip

- The size of a picture must be the same as that of a picture being edited.
- If ***Save as New*** is selected, enter a file name, press [■] and select the storage location.

Mixing Pictures to Create Wallpaper

Mix four pictures to create wallpaper.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Edit Picture**

1 **Select** ***Wallpaper***→[■]

2 **Select [1]**→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→**Select a picture**→[■]

3 **Select pictures for [2] to [4]**

Repeat Step 2.

● To unset a picture, press [Y!](Delete).

4 **Press** [✉] **(OK)**→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]

Tip

- Press [✉] (Resize) to change the picture size to W120 x H200.

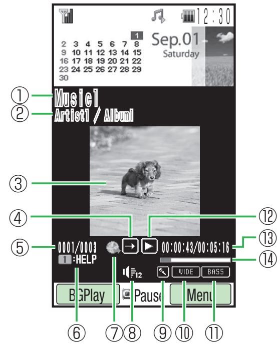
8 Media Player

About Media Player

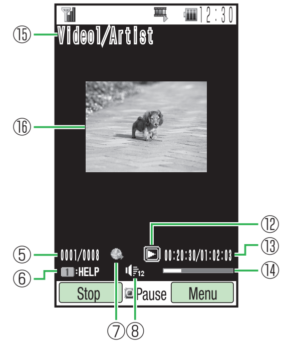
Play or stream audio/video files stored on handset or a memory card. Write messages while listening to music files.

- See page 8-5 for a list of file types that can be played with Media Player.
- You cannot automatically receive S! Mail (page 15-24) while streaming.
- You can connect your handset to your PC with the USB cable and transfer music files to your handset. For details on transferring music files, see page 10-14.
- Use Earphone-Microphone and Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) for a wireless connection. A2DP profile compatible Bluetooth® headsets can be used to accept incoming voice calls while playing music files.
- Media Player cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use Media Player.

Playback Window



Music File Playback Window



Video File Playback Window

①Title
②Artist name/Album name
③Playback image
④Play mode
- All
- Repeat
- Repeat All
- Random
- Current Only

⑤File number/total number of files
⑥Help guidance
⑦Web Link
⑧Playback volume
⑨Voice Cancel
⑩Surround
⑪Equalizer
⑫Playback status
- Playing
- Forwarding
- Paused
- Rewinding
- Buffering
- Slow playback
- Stop

⑬Elapsed playback time/Total playback time
⑭Progress bar
⑮File name/Artist name
⑯Video Display

Playing Music & Videos

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 Select *Audio*/*Videos*→[■]

Disc Search
Files in ***Ring Song・Tone*** and ***Music*** folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist or album.

All Music
All files in ***Ring Song・Tone*** and ***Music*** folders of Data Folder are displayed at once.

Artist/Album/Folder
Files in ***Ring Song・Tone*** and ***Music*** folders of Data Folder are displayed by artist, album or folder.

Videos
Select ***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→[■]
Files in ***Videos*** folder of Data Folder are displayed.

2 Select a file→[■]

- To end Media Player, press [POWER].
- If a music file contains lyric data, display the lyrics by pressing [7] or [9] during playback (page 8-5).
- If a music file includes a jacket photo, the jacket photo appears on the display when the file is selected on the file list. Press [8] during playback to switch the jacket photo.

Tip

- Pressing [] in Standby also displays the Audio menu.
- If handset is closed while playing a music file, Music Player appears on External Display.
- If you press and hold [] in Standby, you can resume playing a music file that you played last.
- Operations when a voice/video call or message is received while Media Player is playing are in order of the Priority settings (page 11-15).
- When a file is selected, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):
  To Playlist*/*Sort by*/*Buy Key*/*Details*/*Change View
- While playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):
  Search Time*/*Play Mode*/*Surround*/*Equalizer*/*Voice Cancel*/*Change Jacket*/*To Playlist*/*Web Link*/*Details*/*Mute*/*Unmute*/*Normal Screen*/*Full Screen*/*Show Icons*/*Hide Icons*/*Display Link

Audio Output

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Audio***→■→***Output Settings***→■

2 **Select** ***Speaker/Earphone*** **or** ***Wireless***→■

If you select ***Wireless***, select a wireless device from the list of paired devices (page 10-7). When using the Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional), see page 8-6.

Setting the Wallpaper Displayed during Music Playback

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Audio***→■→***Player Image***→■

2 **Select** ***Original/Ku-man***→■

Operations during Playback

Functions	Operation while stopped/paused	Operation during playing
Return to the beginning of a file/ Skip to previous	Press * / ◀	Press * / ◀
Skip to next	Press # / ▶	Press # / ▶
Forward	Press and hold ▶ *1*3	Press and hold ▶
Rewind	Press and hold ◀ *1*2*3	Press and hold ◀
Rewind video frame by frame (only video files)	Press ◀ *2	—
Forward video frame by frame (only video files)	Press ▶ *2	—
Slow Playback (only video files)	Press and hold ▶ *2	—
Adjust volume	Use ▲▼	Use ▲▼
View operation guide	Press 1	Press 1

*1 Operation is available for music files only.

*2 Operation is possible only when playback is paused.

*3 Operation is unavailable when using Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional).

Tip

- The following shortcuts can be assigned during music or video playback.

Key	During music file playback	During video file playback
文字	Background Play	—
文字 (Press and hold)	My Library	—
*	Previous File	
#	Next File	
1	Key Guide	
2	Play Mode	—
3	Surround	Mute/Unmute*[1]
4	Equalizer	Screen Display
5	Voice Cancel	—
7	Lyric [Previous]	—
8	Change Jacket	—
9	Lyric [Next]	—
0	—	Icons Display*[2]

*[1] Press ▣ to toggle Mute on and off.
*[2] Available only in full screen mode.

Playable File Formats and Bit Rates

- Even under the following conditions, some files may not be playable.
- Although files with bit rates other than those listed below may be playable, their operation is not guaranteed.

File Formats and Bit Rates Supported by This Handset

File Format	Bit Rate	Sampling Frequency
AMR	4.75 - 12.2 kbps	8 kHz
MPEG-4 AAC-LC	16 - 128 kbps	16 - 48 kHz
HE-AAC	16 - 128 kbps	16 - 48 kHz

File Formats and Bit Rates Supported by the Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

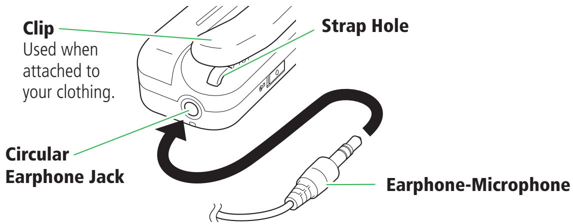
File Format	Bit Rate	Sampling Frequency
MPEG-4 AAC-LC	24/32 kbps 48 kbps 64 kbps 96 kbps 128 kbps	16/22.05/32 kHz 22.05/32 kHz 22.05/32/44.1/48 kHz 44.1 kHz 32/44.1/48 kHz
HE-AAC	32/48 kbps	32/44.1 kHz

Using Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) is a wireless remote. Attach Earphone-Microphone to Bluetooth® Stereo Headset and use it to play, rewind and fast forward music files in Media Player.

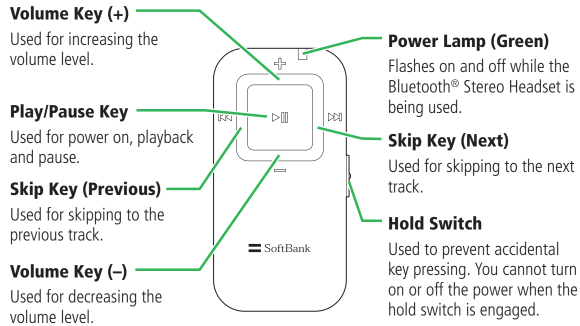
Connecting the Earphone-Microphone

1 **Insert the Earphone-Microphone into the circular earphone jack on the side of Bluetooth® Stereo Headset**



Bluetooth® Stereo Headset Parts & Functions

- Earphones not included with Bluetooth® Stereo Headset.



Turning Power On/Off

Press ▷▯▯ on your Bluetooth® Stereo Headset.
The power lamp (green) flashes on and off and indicates the power is on.
To turn the power off, press ▷▷▯ (or ▯◁◁) and ▷▯▯ at the same time.

Tip

- If no music file is played on Media Player for more than 10 minutes, it shuts down.

Pairing with Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

Follow the steps below when you connect a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset to your handset and use it for the first time.

● When you perform pairing for the first time, leave your Bluetooth® Stereo Headset turned off.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth**

1 Press ⏭ (or ⏮) and ▷|| of a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset at the same time

The power lamp (green) will flash on and off quickly and go in standby to accept Bluetooth® connection requests.

● Complete all the steps after Step 2 within one minute.

2 Select *Search Device*→■

3 Select *Stereo Headset*→■

4 Enter *1234* (passing key)→■→*YES*/*NO*→■

● If you select ***YES***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Using Bluetooth® Stereo Headset

1 Turn Bluetooth® Stereo Headset on

2 Play a music file with Media Player (page 8-3)

Tip

● If you have a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset connected, play music files with Media Player. If you are playing music files from ***Music*** folder of Data Folder and are using a Bluetooth® Stereo Headset, you will only be able to play one track only. Consecutive playback of multiple tracks is not supported.

Locking Bluetooth® Stereo Headset Keys

Bluetooth® Stereo Headsets have a hold switch to prevent accidental key pressing.

To lock all keys, move the hold switch to "🔒".

Using Playlists

Using playlists, you will be able to create a list of your favorite songs and play them as a set. Add music files to playlists by all tracks at once by artist or by album. Besides playlists that you created in advance, there is also My Library playlist where the current music file being played can be added (page 8-11).

Creating a Playlist

Create up to ten playlists in your handset. Also create up to ten playlists in a memory card. Each playlist can contain up to 50 tracks.

1 In Standby, press [key]→*Playlist*→[●]

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*New Playlist*→[●]→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[●]

3 Enter a playlist name→[●]→*YES*→[●]

4 Select *All Music*→[●]

Selecting by Artist/by Album

Select ***Artist*/*Album***→[●]→Select an artist/album→[●]

5 Select a music file→[●]

- To add another file, repeat Step 5.

6 Press [✉] (Create)

Playing a Playlist

1 In Standby, press [key]→*Playlist*→[●]

2 Select a playlist→[✉] (Play)

Tip

- When a playlist is selected, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Delete*/*Copy*/*Rename*/*New Playlist*/*Change Order***

Editing a Playlist

1 In Standby, press [key]→*Playlist*→[●]

2 Select a playlist

Editing a Playlist Name

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Rename***→[●]→Edit a playlist name→[●]

Deleting

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[●]→***YES***→[●]

Copying

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Copy***→[●]→***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→[●]

Adding Tracks to Playlist

Press [●]→[Y!] (Menu)→***Add Tracks***→[●]→***All Music***→[●]→Select a file→[●]→[✉] (Add)

- To select music files by artist or album, select ***Artist*/*Album*** and select an artist/album.

Deleting Tracks of a Playlist

Press ■→ (Menu)→***Remove Tracks***→■→***One***→■→***YES***→■

● To delete multiple tracks, select ***Select Multi***, select files you want to delete, and press ✉ (Delete).

● If you delete all tracks on a playlist, the playlist will be deleted, too.

Changing the Playing Order of a Playlist

Press ■→Select a track→✉ (Change)→Use to select the position to which to move the track→■

Tip

- If you delete a file from a playlist, the original music file will not be deleted.

Accessing Recently Played Files

Display the 20 most recent music and video files played.

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select *Audio*→■→*Playlist*→■→*Recent*→■→Select a file→■**

Accessing the Recently Played Video Files

Select ***Videos***→■→***Recent***→■→Select a file→■

Tip

- Only playable files are saved to the list of recently played files.
- If you play the same file more than once, the most recent record is saved to the list.
- When a file is selected, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):
To Playlist/Delete/View Type/Details
- While playing, press (Menu) to perform the following (displayed items vary depending on the file type):
Search Time/Play Mode/Surround/Equalizer/Voice Cancel/Change Jacket/To Playlist/Web Link/Details/Mute/Unmute/Normal Screen/Full Screen/Show Icons/Hide Icons/Display Link

Downloading Music and Video Files

Download music and video files from Yahoo! Keitai, etc.

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Audio/Videos*** **→ ■**

2 **Select** ***Download Music/Download Videos*** **→ ■ → *YES* → ■**

● Follow the onscreen instructions.

Streaming

Access Web pages for streaming music/video files.

● Packet transmission fees apply even if playback is paused because the handset continues network communication.

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Streaming*** **→ ■ →** ***Enter URL*** **→ ■ → Enter URL → ■**

Streaming from Bookmark URL

Access the bookmarked Web Pages for streaming.

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Streaming*** **→ ■ →** ***Bookmarks*** **→ ■**

2 **Select a Bookmark → ■**

Streaming from URLs Streamed

Main menu ▶ **Media Player**

1 **Select** ***Streaming*** **→ ■ →** ***Recent*** **→ ■**

2 **Select a title → ■**

Streaming from Links in Messages and Web Pages

Play stream content by selecting a link.

Streaming from S! Mail/SMS

Display a link → ■ → ***Connect*** → ■

Streaming from the Internet

Display a link → ■

● Operations may vary depending on the website.

Other Operations & Settings

- Titles in a playlist cannot be added to another playlist during playback of the playlist.

Saving Music Files to My Library

Add up to 50 tracks to My Library.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press and hold [key]

Adding a Music File Being Played to a Playlist

Add a music file being played or paused to a playlist.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) →*To Playlist*→[●]

2 Select a Playlist→[●]

Switching Play Modes

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) →*Play Mode*→[●]

2 Select a Play mode→[●]

Using Search Time

Specify a position (time) from which you want to play a file.

1 While a file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu)→ *Search Time*→[●]

2 Enter a start point (time)→[●]

Playback starts from the specified point.

Surround

Expand the spatial imaging of playback.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) →*Surround*→[●]

2 Select a surround type→[●]

Equalizer

Boost certain frequencies during playback.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) →*Equalizer*→[●]

2 Select an equalizer type or genre→[●]

Setting Voice Cancel

Reduce the vocal level of playback and emphasize the instruments.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [Y!] (Menu) →*Voice Cancel*→[■]

2 Select *ON/OFF*→[■]

Tip

- Voice Cancel may be unavailable for certain music files.
- Setting Voice Cancel to ***ON*** while playing a monaural music file will decrease the volume of playback sound.
- Voice Cancel cannot be set at the same time as Surround or Equalizer.

Sending Files

Send music or video files to other mobile phones or infrared/Bluetooth® compatible devices (optional).

Main menu ▶ Data Folder

1 Select *Ring Song・Tone/Music/Videos*→[■]→Select a music/video file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Send*→[■]

2 Select the transmission method→[■]

- See page 10-3 for infrared communication and page 10-8 for Bluetooth® communication.

Viewing Properties

View music/video file properties.

1 Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Details*→[■]

Tip

- The file name and size, playback time, etc. are displayed as properties. Displayed items vary depending on the file type.

Switching to Background Playback

Switch to background playback in order to use other functions.

1 While a music file is playing/paused, press [✉] (BGPlay)

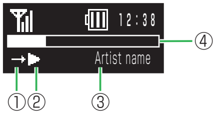
Tip

- You can switch to background playback by pressing [文字] while a music file is being played, too. If you press [文字] again in Standby during background playback, Media Player will be displayed.
- Background playback may be paused or canceled depending on the function you activate. For example, if S! Appli is activated, playback is paused. When you close your handset, S! Appli is paused and playback resumes.

Music Player

Use Music Player to navigate Media Player when the handset is closed.

Playback Window



①Play mode
②Playback status
③Press and hold [key]/[key] to toggle between title, artist name, album name, track number and playback time.
④Progress bar

Activating Music Player

1 **Close your handset while a music file is being played with Media Player**

Note

- When the battery level is low, Music Player won't launch.

Tip

- Press [key]/[key] to adjust the volume while playing music with Music Player.
- If you open your handset while playing music with Music Player, it switches to background playback.

8 Media Player

9 Data Folder

Data Folder

Store files to Data Folder. Saved files can be used as wallpaper and ringtones, or attached to messages (page 15-8).

Data Folder capacity is approximately 58 Mbytes or 2,500 items (excluding S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli), including personal folders. Up to approximately 100 S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli items can be stored in Data Folder.

- Pictures, My Pictograms, Ring Song・Tone, S! Appli, Music, Videos, Lifestyle-Appli, Books and Templates folders contain a link to a download site in Yahoo! Keitai.

Structure of Data Folder

The following folders are preinstalled in your handset.

Data Folder	
Pictures	Picture files/My Pictograms folder
Digital Camera*1	Pictures taken in Digital mode
Ring Song・Tone	Sound files such as melodies/Sound recorded with Voice Recorder
S! Appli	Downloaded S! Appli
Music	Downloaded music files/Chaku-Uta Full®
Videos	Video files
TV	TV recorded files
Lifestyle-Appli*2	Lifestyle-Appli
Books	Downloaded e-books, e-comics, etc.
Templates	Mail templates
Flash(R)	Flash® files/Flash(R) Tones folder
Main Menu*2	Image files for Main menu
Gamendeco	Icon/image files for screen decoration
Mini Tool*2	Mini Tool image files/Mini Photo folder
Other Documents	Other files

*1 Available only for memory card Data Folder

*2 Available only for handset Data Folder

Files Storable in Data Folder

The following files are stored on the corresponding folder in Data Folder.

Folder	File Format (Extension)	Page
Pictures*[1]	JPEG (.JPEG, .JPG, .JPE) GIF (.GIF) PNG (.PNG)	9-4
My Pictograms	GIF (.GIF) GPK (.GPK)	
Digital Camera*[2]	JPEG (.JPG)	9-18
Ring Song・Tone*[1]	AMR (.AMR) SMAF (.MMF) MPEG-4*[3] (.3GP, .MP4, .M4A)	9-5
S! Appli	Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	17-2
Music*[1]	MPEG-4 (.3GP*[4], .MP4*[4], .M4A, .SMC)	9-6
Videos*[1]	MPEG-4*[3] (.3GP, .3G2, .MP4)	9-6
TV*[5]	DTV*[6]	9-6
Lifestyle-Appli*[7]	Java (.JAD, .JAR, .RMS)	21-4
Books*[1]	CCF (.CCF) XMDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)	9-7
Templates	HTML mail templates (.HMT)	9-7
Flash®*[1]	Flash® (.SWF)	9-7
Flash® Tones	Ringtone Flash® (.SWF)	
Main Menu*[1]*[7]	Image files for Main menu (.TMF)	9-8
Gamendeco*[1]	Icon/image files for screen decoration (.TSBI1, .TSBW1, .TSBT1)	9-8
Mini Tool*[1]*[7]	Mini Tool image files (.TGF)	9-8
Mini Photo*[7]	Animation files for Mini Tool (.TFF)	
Other Documents*[1]	vCard (.VCF) vCalendar (.VCS, .ICS) vMessage (.VMG) EML (.EML) vBookmark (.VBM, .URL) vNote (.VNT) Text (.TXT) PDF (.PDF) Word (.DOC) Excel (.XLS) PowerPoint® (.PPT) Other files*[8] (other extensions)	9-8, 9-9

*[1] Folders can be created in each folder.
*[2] Folder is only available on memory card. Files not in compliance with DCF standards cannot be viewed.
*[3] Playback of some files may not be possible.
*[4] Only Chaku-Uta® files are saved.
*[5] Folders can be created only in Data Folder on the handset.
*[6] File format of TV recorded files when saved in the handset.
*[7] Available only from handset.
*[8] Files not available from handset.

Note

- Files saved to handset may be altered or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- 🔒 appears before file name if the file requires content usage rights. Press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Buy Key*** to obtain a content key.

Tip

- Chaku-Uta®, S! Appli, video and other files saved to the handset or memory card may become inaccessible after handset repairs or when USIM card is replaced.
- You may not be able to open a file on a PC, PDA, or other device if: You change the file name on your handset or the file name includes a "～" or "—".
- DCF is an abbreviation for "Design rule for Camera File system," a standard developed by the Japan Electronic Industry Development Association (JEIDA) for the purpose of facilitating the transfer of digital camera images among various devices.
- Whether a file can be sent via infrared/Bluetooth® communication or moved to the memory card depends on the forwarding and memory card forwarding permission properties. However, the files in the ***My Pictograms*** folder can be sent via infrared/Bluetooth® communication even if the forwarding property is ***Unavailable***.
- Flash® is an animation technology that combines images and sound.

Using Files & Folders

Opening Files

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→[■]**

2 **Select a file→[■]**

Using Download Links

Some folders contain a link to Yahoo! Keitai. Use links to access Yahoo! Keitai and download content.

Using Picture Files

Select/open a picture file and press [Y!] (Menu) to access Sub Menu.

Send: Transfer the selected file.

- **As Mail**: Send via S! Mail (page 15-8).
- **Via Infrared**: Send via infrared (page 10-3).
- **Via Bluetooth**: Send via Bluetooth® (page 10-8).

Set as: Set the selected file.

- **Wallpaper**: Wallpaper.
- **In-Calls**: Incoming call image.
- **Messages**: Incoming message image.

Edit Picture: Edit the selected image (page 7-25).

Location: View location information of selected file or access map via the web.

Delete: Delete files.

- **One**: Delete the selected file (page 9-14).
- **Select Multi**: Select multiple files to delete (page 9-14).
- **All**: Delete all files (page 9-14).

Rename: Change the file name (page 9-13).

Copy: Copy files.

- **One**: Copy the selected file (page 9-15).
- **Select Multi**: Select multiple files to copy (page 9-15).
- **All**: Copy all files (page 9-15).

Move: Move files.

- **One**: Move the selected file (page 9-14).
- **Select Multi**: Select multiple files to move (page 9-14).
- **All**: Move all files (page 9-14).

Change View: Select view.

- **View Type**: Switch between thumbnail and list views for files and folders (page 9-10).
- **Sort by**: Change sort condition (page 9-16).
- **Slideshow**: Start slideshow (page 9-16).

Create Folder: Create a new folder (page 9-13).

Buy Key: Obtain a content key.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, available/unavailable to save photo, and setting information).

Using Melody Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set as: The following items are displayed.

- **Ringtone**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for incoming voice/video calls, messages, delivery check messages, missed calls, Circle Talk calls or Hot Status notifications.
- **Sound Effects**: Set the selected file as power on/off, opening or closing tone.

Show Icons/Hide Icons: Switch the display of icons on the playback window.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by***, ***Create Folder*** or ***Buy Key***.

Using Music Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set as: The following items are displayed.

- **Voice Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
- **Video Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
- **Message**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving messages.
- **DeliveryCheck**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.
- **Missed Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for missed calls (page 14-6).
- **Circle Talk**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for Circle Talk calls.
- **Hot Status**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for Hot Status notifications.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, title, artist, album name, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by***, ***Create Folder*** or ***Buy Key***.

Using Video Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set as: The following items are displayed.

- **Voice Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
- **Video Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
- **Message**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving messages.
- **DeliveryCheck**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

Change View: The following items are displayed.

- **View Type**: Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide) (page 9-10).
- **Sort by**: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, bit rate, sampling rate, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, title, creator, copyright, create date, description, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Create Folder*** or ***Buy Key***.

Using Digital TV Recording Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Change View: The following items are displayed.

- **View Type**: Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide) (page 9-10).
- **Sort by**: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file size, play time, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, file type, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Delete***, ***Rename****, ***Move*** or ***Create Folder***.

* You can only edit the names of files saved in the handset Data Folder.

Using Book Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Change View: The following items are displayed.

- **View Type**: Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide) (page 9-10).
- **Sort by**: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 9-16).

Web Link: Connect to the specified Website.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, creator, authority*, seller*, publisher*, episode, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, description, and vender).

* These items do not appear for some types of book files.

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Create Folder*** or ***Buy Key***.

Using Templates

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Create Mail: Create a message using selected templates.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move*** or ***Sort by***.

Using Flash® Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set Wallpaper*1: Set the selected file as the wallpaper for Standby.

Set as*2: The following items are displayed.

- **Voice Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for voice calls.
- **Video Call**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for video calls.
- **Message**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for receiving messages.
- **DeliveryCheck**: Set the selected file as the ringtone for delivery check messages.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view, and setting information).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by***, ***Create Folder****3 or ***Buy Key***.

*1 Unavailable for files saved in ***Flash(R) Tones*** folder.

*2 Available only for files saved in ***Flash(R) Tones*** folder.

*3 The folder can be created only in ***Flash(R)*** folder.

Using Main Menu/Mini Tool Image Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Set as Menu*[1]: Set the selected file for Main menu.

Set Mini Tool*[2]: Set the selected file for Mini Tool.

Change View: The following items are displayed.

- **View Type**: Switch the display of files and folders between thumbnail view (icons and images) and list view (text and guide) (page 9-10).
- **Sort by**: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, available/unavailable to play/view and setting information).

*1 Appears for Main menu image files only.

*2 Appears for Mini Tool image files only.

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Move*** or ***Create Folder***.

Using Files for Gamendeco

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Gamendeco: Set the icons/images of the Main Screen (page 11-7).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, picture size, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by*** or ***Create Folder***.

Using vObjects

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

To Phone Book/To Cal./Tasks/To Notepad/To Message/ To Bookmarks: Save vObjects to the Calendar or Phone Book, etc (page 9-12).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by*** or ***Create Folder***.

Using Text Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Encoding Type: Change character encoding type.

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date, and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move***, ***Sort by***, ***Create Folder*** or ***Buy Key***.

Tip

- Depending on file size and number of text lines, a file may not be played.

Using Document Files

Press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:

Sort by: Changes the order of files in specified condition (page 9-16).

Details: Display the properties of the selected file (file name, file type, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer, create date and available/unavailable to play/view).

See "Using Picture Files" (page 9-4) about ***Send***, ***Delete***, ***Rename***, ***Copy***, ***Move*** or ***Create Folder***.

Displaying a PC Document

A PC document is a document or a PDF file created on a personal computer. Your handset can display Microsoft® Office Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, and PDF document files.

Displaying a Document File

- Display of the following file formats (extensions) is supported: Microsoft® Word (.doc), Microsoft® Excel (.xls), Microsoft® PowerPoint® (.ppt), and PDF (.pdf).

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select *Other Documents*→[●]→Select a document file→[●]**

Operations While a Word, Excel, PowerPoint®, or PDF File is Displayed

Function	Operation (Word, Excel, PowerPoint®)	Operation (PDF)
Scroll up, down, left, right	Press [✥]	Press [✥]
Enlarge page	Press [●]	Press [●]
Reduce page	Press [✉]	Press [✉]
Display actual size*	Press [1]	Press [1]
Display entire page	—	Press [2]
Rotate 90 degrees right	Press [3]	Press [3]
Go to previous page/sheet/slide	Press [4]	Press [4]
Show bookmarks	—	Press [5]
Go to next page/sheet/slide	Press [6]	Press [6]
Go to first page/sheet/slide	Press [7]	Press [7]
Search	Press [8]	Press [8]
Go to last page/sheet/slide	Press [9]	Press [9]
Go to specific page/sheet/slide	Press [0]	Press [0]

* Valid when display is reduced or enlarged only

Note

- Document file contents may be different from how they appear on your PC.
- Some document files may take a long time to appear.

Tip

- The following procedure can also be used to display document files.
  Main menu → ***Tools*** → ***Doc Viewer*** → ***Phone Memory/Memory Card*** → Select a file
- Select a document file and press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following (depending on the file, some items are not displayed):
  Move/View/Rotate View/Search/Key Guide/Version Info./Slideshow/Index/Layout/File Info.

9 Data Folder

Changing Data Folder View

Select the list view or thumbnail view to see a list of files contained in ***Pictures***, ***My Pictograms***, ***Digital Camera***, ***Videos*** , ***TV***, ***Books***, ***Main Menu***, ***Mini Tool*** and ***Mini Photo*** folders.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select *Pictures/My Pictograms/Digital Camera/Videos/TV/Books/Main Menu/Mini Tool/Mini Photo* →[●]→[Y!] (Menu)**

2 **Select *Change View*→[●]→*View Type*→[●]→Select the view type→[●]**

Displaying the Memory Usage Status

Check the memory space used in Data Folder.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory** ▶ **Memory Status**

1 **Select *Data Folder*→[●]**

- Press [Y!] (Count) to check how many files are stored.

Tip

- You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below. Press [✉] to switch screens to check the used space on the handset and the memory card.
  Main menu → ***Data Folder*** → ***Memory Status***

Displaying the File Properties

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→[●]**

2 **Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Details*→[●]**

Using Picture Files

Use picture files stored in Data Folder for wallpaper, incoming images, video calls, Phone Book (picture), and so on.

1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on setting the wallpaper, see page 11-6.
- For details on setting the incoming image, see page 11-8.
- For details on the video call setting, see page 5-5.
- For details on setting Phone Book pictures, see page 4-3.

2 Select *Pictures*→■→Select a file→■

3 Use ✥ to adjust the position of the image to clip →Y! (Cut)→■

- For details on changing image size, see page 7-25.

Note

- If an animation GIF is selected, only the first image (still image) is displayed.

Tip

- Some functions may not allow you to change image size.
- If the image size cannot be changed, animation GIF files are displayed as animations.

Using Melody, Music/Videos/Flash® Files

Melody files, music files, and video files in Data Folder can be used as ringtone, incoming image and alarm sound, etc. Also, Flash® files in the ***Flash(R)*** folder can be specified for wallpaper, and files in the ***Main Menu*** folder can be specified for the Main menu image.

1 Browse Data Folder from each function

- For details on the Main menu image setting, see page 1-22.
- For details on the sound setting, see page 11-4.
- For details on the Wallpaper setting, see page 11-6.
- For details on setting the schedule alarm tone, see page 13-15.
- For details on setting the alarm tone, see page 13-7.
- For details on setting a different ringtone for each Phone Book entry, see page 4-4.

2 Select *Ring Song･Tone/Music/Videos/Flash(R)/Flash(R) Tones*→■→Select a file→■ (twice)

Using vObjects

About vObjects

By converting data such as Phone Book entries, Calendar events and Task data into vObject file format, you can exchange files with other vObject-compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs. vObjects can be sent and received as mail attachments (page 15-8) or transferred by Infrared (page 10-3) or Bluetooth® (page 10-8) communication. You can also exchange them with a memory card.

- vObject compatible software is required to use the data of vObjects on a PC or other device.
- Depending on the contents of vObjects, the exchange of vObjects between a vObject compatible handset and PC or other device may not be possible.
- When vObjects include many characters, all vObjects may not be able to be sent or received.
- Depending on the software used, vObjects may not be displayed properly.

Creating a vObject

1 Display a Phone Book (chapter 4)/Calendar (page 13-11)/Tasks (page 13-20)/Message (page 15-12)/ Bookmark (page 16-6)/Notepad (page 13-9) data

Creating One vObject

Select a file→Y! (Menu)→***Export***→■→***One***→■

Creating Multiple vObjects

Press Y! (Menu)→***Export***→■→***Select Multi***→■→Select files →■→✉ (Save)/✉ (Export)

Creating All Files as vObjects

Press Y! (Menu)→***Export***→■→***All***→■

2 Select *Phone Memory*/*Data Folder*/*Memory Card*→ ■→Select a folder→■

Importing a vObject into a Function

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Other Documents**

Importing One vObject

Select a vObject→Y! (Menu)→***To Phone Book*/*To Cal./Tasks*/ *To Message*/*To Bookmarks*/*To Notepad***→■→***One***→■

Importing Multiple vObjects

Select a vObject→Y! (Menu)→***To Phone Book*/*To Cal./Tasks*/*To Message*/*To Bookmarks*/*To Notepad***→■→***Select Multi***→■ →Select vObjects→■→✉ (Save)

Editing Files & Folders

- You cannot create a folder with the same name in the same folder.
- You cannot use the following single-byte symbols, pictographs and line break icon "↵" for a folder name. "\ / ¥ : ; ? " < > | . ※"

Adding Folders

A new folder can be created in the ***Pictures***, ***Ring Song・Tone***, ***Music***, ***Videos***, ***TV***, ***Books***, ***Flash***®, ***Main Menu***, ***Gamendeco***, ***Mini Tool*** or ***Other Documents*** folders.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→■**

2 **Select a file→✉ (Menu)→*Create Folder*→■**

3 **Enter a folder name→■**

Note

- Folders cannot be created within the ***TV*** folder on a memory card.

Tip

- You can also create folders by pressing ✉ (Menu) and selecting ***Create Folder*** while the Downloaded item in a folder or a folder itself is selected.

Changing Folder/File Name

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

Changing Folder Name

Select the folder you created→✉ (Menu)→***Rename Folder***→■→Enter a folder name→■

- If folder security is set (page 9-16), a window appears in which you enter your security code (page 1-25) after you select ***Rename Folder***.

Changing File Name

Select a file→✉ (Menu)→***Rename***→■→Enter a file name→■

Deleting Folders/Files

Deleting Folders

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select the folder you created→✉ (Menu)→*Delete Folder*→■**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→■**

Deleting Files

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→■**

Deleting One File

Select a file→☒ (Menu)→*Delete*→■→*One*→■→*YES*→■

Deleting Multiple Files

Press ☒ (Menu)→*Delete*→■→*Select Multi*→■→Select files →■→✉ (Delete)→*YES*→■

Deleting All Files

Press ☒ (Menu)→*Delete*→■→*All*→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→■

Tip

- If you try to delete a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you delete the file, the setting is reset to the default.

Moving Folders

Move the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select the folder you created→☒ (Menu)→*Move Folder*→■**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

Tip

- If you try to move a folder containing a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move the folder, the setting is reset to the default.
- A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be moved. Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to move.

Moving Files

Move files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→■**

Moving One File

Select a file→☒ (Menu)→*Move*→■→*One*→■

Moving Multiple Files

Press ☒ (Menu)→*Move*→■→*Select Multi*→■→Select files →■→✉ (Move)

Moving All Files

Press ☒ (Menu)→*Move*→■→*All*→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→■**

3 **Select the destination folder→■**

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Moved

Press ✉ (Create)→Enter a folder name→■

Note

- If Details indicate that the file is ***Unavailable*** for forward or memory card transfer cannot be moved to other folders.
- When you move a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a music file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP, .MP4 and .M4A) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Tip

- If you try to move a picture or melody file which is used for function settings, a confirmation window appears. If you move the file, the setting is reset to the default.

Copying Folders

Copy the folders you created to the handset or the memory card.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select the folder you created→[Y!] (Menu)→*Copy Folder*→[●]**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[●]**

- When you have created a folder in ***Ring Song · Tone*** or ***Music***, select the copy destination folder from ***Ring Song · Tone*** or ***Music***.

Tip

- A file with a name using more than 32 characters cannot be copied. Change the file name or omit the file from the folder to copy.

Copying Files

Copy files stored in the handset or the memory card to another folder.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→[●]**

Copying One File

Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→***Copy***→[●]→***One***→[●]

Copying Multiple Files

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Copy***→[●]→***Select Multi***→[●]→Select files→[●]→[✉] (Copy)

Copying All Files

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Copy***→[●]→***All***→[●]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[●]**

3 **Select the destination folder→[●]**

Creating a New Folder to which a File is Copied

Press [✉] (Create)→Enter a folder name→[●]

Note

- If Details indicate that the file is ***Unavailable*** for forward, the file cannot be copied. However, files in ***My Pictograms*** folder may be able to be copied even if Details indicate that it is ***Unavailable*** for the forward.
- When you copy a still picture file taken in Digital mode to the memory card, or a file with MPEG-4 format (.3GP and .MP4) to another folder, select a fixed folder first and then select a destination folder.

Setting Folder Security

Set Security Lock ***ON*** to require security code entry (page 1-25) when accessing files in the folder.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select the folder you created→[Y!] (Menu)→*Security Lock*→[■]**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→[■]**

Other Functions

Playing Slide Show

Display picture files in succession about every two seconds.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Pictures**

1 **Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change View*→[■]**

2 **Select *Slideshow*→[■]**

Changing the Order of Files within the Selected Folder

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Select a folder→[■]**

2 **Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change View*→[■]→*Sort by*→[■]**

3 **Select a sort option→[■]**

- Files in the memory card cannot be sorted by titles.

Memory Card

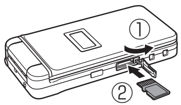
Getting Started

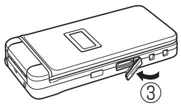
The pictures you take, videos you record and various downloaded files can be saved to a memory card.

- This manual refers to a microSD memory card as a "memory card".
- For details on saving files to a memory card, see the corresponding explanation for each function.
- Your handset supports memory cards with a storage capacity of up to 2 GB (as of June, 2007). There is no guarantee that all memory cards will work with your handset.
- Do not use excessive force to open the memory card slot cover. Doing so may damage the cover.

Inserting a Memory Card

Insert a memory card after turning off the handset. Otherwise, files on the memory card may be lost.





1 **Open the memory card slot cover (①)**

2 **Gently push a memory card into the slot until it clicks into position, making sure the gold terminal is facing up (②)**

3 **Close the memory card slot cover (③)**

Removing a Memory Card

Gently push in memory card (until it clicks) and release. The memory card will eject.

Note

- The memory card may pop out abruptly when removing it from your handset. Be cautious when ejecting the memory card.

Using a Memory Card

Check and edit pictures and other data saved to a memory card. Also save a backup of Data Folder, Phone Book and other data in your handset to a memory card (pages 4-10, 9-12).

- If the battery level is low, your handset may not read or write files.
- Never remove the memory card or battery pack while files are being accessed or formatting. Damage to memory card may result and files/data may be lost.
- Processing may take a while for some types of files.
- Files on the memory card may be changed or lost by improper use, accidents, or mechanical failure. We recommend that you make backups of your important files.
- Some files saved from a PC or other device may not be displayed/played on your handset.
- Among files on the memory card, the files with a name using more than 32 characters are not displayed.
- If the same name is used for more than one file or folder on the memory card using double-byte characters regardless of upper case or lower case, the name may not be displayed correctly on your PC or other device.
- Do not put labels or stickers on the memory card.

Memory Card Configuration

The folder tree on the memory card is shown below.

- Some files cannot be played depending on the file type.

Folder Name	Description
DCIM	Stores pictures taken in Digital mode (page 7-8).
PRIVATE	
MYFOLDER	
Mail	The configuration is identical to Message Box (page 15-12) on your handset.
My Items	Stores folders (Pictures, My Pictograms, Videos, Ring Song·Tone, Music, Templates, Flash®, Flash® Tones, Books, S! Appli, Other Documents) of memory card Data Folder (page 9-2). Bookmark backup files are also stored.
TS_Folder	Stores setting data of which backups are made with Relocate function (page 13-32), files for Gamendeco, and files which can be viewed only from the Media Player.
Utility	
Calendar	Stores appointment backup files.
Contacts	Stores Phone Book data and backup files.
Memo	Stores Notepad backup files.
Rights	Stores Content Key backup files.
Tasks	Stores Tasks backup files.

Folder Name	Description
SD-VIDEO*	Stores recorded TV programs.

* Do not alter data on your PC. Files may become unreadable on your handset.

Formatting a Memory Card

Formatting a memory card deletes all data in the memory card.

- If a memory card is formatted by another device, it may not work properly with your handset. Be sure to use your handset to format a memory card.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory** ▶ **Format Card**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→■**

Checking Files Stored on the Memory Card

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder**

1 **Press ▢▪**

2 **Select a folder→■**

3 **Select a file→■**

Confirming Memory Card Usage Status

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory** ▶ **Memory Status**

1 **Select *Memory Card*→■**

Tip

- You can check used space on the memory card with the procedures below.
  Main menu → ***Data Folder*** → ▢▪ → ***Memory Status***
  Press ✉ to toggle between handset and memory card status.

10 File Transfer

Infrared

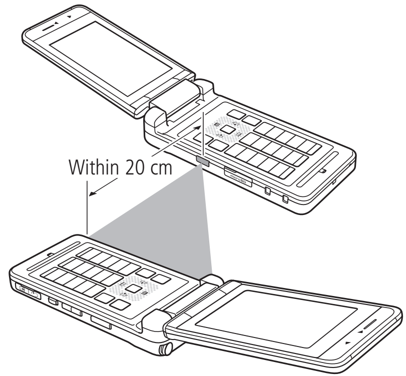
Exchange the Calendar data of your handset, Phone Book entries of your handset, memory card or USIM card, pictures/videos taken or recorded with the camera and Data Folder data that can be forwarded with an infrared compatible device (PC, handset).

Tip

- The infrared function of your handset complies with IrMC 1.1, but some files may not be exchanged.

Precautions

- A dirty Infrared Port may cause an infrared communication failure. If the Infrared Port is dirty, gently wipe it with a soft cloth while making sure not to scratch the port.
- Do not move the devices until the file transfer is complete.
- Direct sunlight or fluorescent light may interfere with infrared communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via infrared communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is canceled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or not received.
- USB and Bluetooth® communication are unavailable during Infrared transfers.
- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.
- Bring the Infrared Port of your handset to within 20 cm of the Infrared Port of the destination device and align both ports. Make sure no objects are placed between them.



Using Infrared

Files can be sent/received and connected to a dial-up connection via infrared communication. The " " indicator appears at the top of the display during transfer.

About the Authentication Password

The authentication password (4 digits) is for sending and receiving all data by infrared communication. When sending or receiving all data, the same authentication password needs to be entered for both the sending and receiving devices.

Activating Infrared

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via infrared communication.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Infrared** ▶ **ON/OFF**

1 **Select *ON*→[■]**

- To cancel the infrared communication standby, select ***OFF***.

Note

- Infrared communication is unavailable when offline mode (page 2-12) is set to ***ON***.
- If the handset does not communicate via infrared communication for three minutes after the infrared communication is ***ON***, the infrared communication standby is canceled automatically.

Sending Data

1 **Access a function that supports infrared**

2 **Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Send*/*Send vCard*→[■]**

3 **Select *Via Infrared*→[■]**

Note

- The files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

Receiving Data

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (left) is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device**

2 **Select *YES*→[■]**

- To reject the reception of files, select ***NO***.
- When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule, task or memo file, select ***YES*** to save it to your Phone Book, schedule, task or memo list.

3 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[■]**

Tip

- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.
- When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 9-3). If the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Infrared** ▶ **Transfer All**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Phone Book*/*Cal./Tasks*→[■]**

- When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book. Select ***Without Image*** to send the Phone Book entries without images.
- When transferring schedule/task files, a message appears. Select ***Without Past*** to delete past files.

3 **Enter your authentication password (page 10-2)**

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules of the Calendar or tasks can be received from another infrared compatible handset. Enter the same authentication password on both the sending and receiving devices.

The handset can receive files when the infrared communication setting (page 10-3) is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request from another infrared compatible device**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Enter your authentication password (page 10-2)**

4 **Select *Add*→[■]**

Overwriting All Entries

Select ***Overwrite*** → [■] → ***YES*** → [■]

Tip

- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.

Using Infrared for Dial-up Connections

The handset can communicate with a PC via infrared communication if the PC is compatible with infrared communication, and the PC can access the Internet via your handset. For details about settings and operations of a modem on a PC, see the manual for the PC.

The handset can use dial-up connections when the infrared communication setting (page 10-3) is ***ON***.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request from an infrared compatible PC

Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that transfers of large files may result in high connection fees.

Bluetooth®

Transfer Phone Book, picture and other files between your handset and another Bluetooth® compatible device. Also use a handsfree compatible device to make handsfree calls.

- You can use Bluetooth® Stereo Headset (optional) to play Media Player music files wirelessly (page 8-6).

Getting Started

Bluetooth® Communications

- Bluetooth® operates in the 2.4 GHz unlicensed frequency band. Depending on the status of other devices used in the spectrum, Bluetooth® connection may slow down/terminate, or the range may decrease.
- Bluetooth® connection/transfer rate is affected by distance between handsets, obstructions, signal conditions, handset status, etc.

Handset Bluetooth® Specifications

Communication System	Bluetooth® specification Ver.1.2
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class 2
Transmission Range*1	Within about 10 meters
Bluetooth® Profiles Supported*2	HFP (Hands-Free Profile) HSP (Headset Profile) DUN (Dialup Networking Profile) OPP (Object Push Profile) FTP (File Transfer Profile)*3 A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) AVRCP (Audio/Visual Remote Control Profile)
Frequency Band	2.4 GHz (2.402 GHz ～ 2.480 GHz)

*1 Varies depending on obstacles between the communication device and the signal conditions.

*2 The specifications of Bluetooth® devices differ according to usage. There are standards for Bluetooth®.

*3 Only the server function is supported.

Frequency

The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses the 2.4 GHz spectrum ranging from 2.402 GHz to 2.480 GHz. Other wireless devices may be using the same frequency. In order to avoid radio interference, note the followings:

- The Bluetooth® system on the handset uses 2.4 GHz. This spectrum is used by industrial, scientific, and medical equipment (microwaves etc.), other radio stations of the same kind, premises radio stations for radio frequency identification which require a license (used in production lines etc.), license free specified low power radio stations, and amateur radio stations ("other radio stations") .

1. If radio interference occurs between handset and other radio stations, change locations to use the handset, or stop using the handset (stop emitting radio waves) at once.
2. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

2.4FH1

This wireless device uses 2.4 GHz spectrum. It employs FH-SS modulation, and causes interference within a 10-meter radius.

Precautions

- Communication tests have not been performed for all Bluetooth® compatible devices. There is no guarantee of connection with all Bluetooth® devices.
- The security function used for wireless communication complies with the standard specifications of Bluetooth®. However, take care when using Bluetooth® for data communication because, in some cases, security may be inadequate depending on the operating environment and configuration.
- SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any data generated or information leaked during Bluetooth® communication.
- If the handset receives a call/video call while it is sending or receiving files via Bluetooth® communication, a fixed incoming image is displayed and a fixed melody ringtone sounds. If you answer the call, the data communication is cancelled.
- When sending/receiving vObjects, some information may be altered or not received.
- You cannot use infrared communication and USB functions/settings other than the charge function during Bluetooth® communication.
- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.

Using Bluetooth®

Use Bluetooth® to connect handset with other Bluetooth compatible devices. Transfer files with compatible devices and make dial-up connections.

About the Authentication PIN Code

Authentication PIN code is a 4 to 16 digit number required to connect to a compatible device. Code must be entered by both devices before connection is established.

● You can set a different Bluetooth authentication PIN code on each device.

Activating Bluetooth®

Set the handset so that it is connected by other compatible devices via Bluetooth® communication. The " ✻ " indicator appears at the top of the display during Bluetooth® communication standby.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **ON/OFF**

1 **Select *ON*→■**

● To cancel the Bluetooth® communication standby, select ***OFF***.

Note

- Bluetooth® communication is unavailable when offline mode (page 2-12) is set to ***ON***.

Pairing with a Bluetooth® Enabled Device

Before establishing a Bluetooth® connection, you need to search for, find and then pair with a Bluetooth® enabled device.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth**

1 **Select *Search Device*→■**

The handset starts searching for Bluetooth® devices and then the names and icons of devices you can connect to appear.

● The device type icons are as follows:

PC	Audio device
Mobile phone	Peripherals
LAN	Printer
Stereo Headset	Other device
Handsfree device	

2 **Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→■→ Enter an authentication PIN code→■→*YES*/*NO* →■**

When the handset is connected to another Bluetooth® compatible device, the device is registered in the paired device list.

● Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

Note

- An authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) needs to be entered within approximately 30 seconds for security reasons.

Tip

- Search for up to 8 devices at a time.
- If the handset cannot obtain the name of a device, a device address is displayed.
- You can register up to 20 Bluetooth® compatible devices in the paired device list. If you register the 21st device, the oldest device (excluding trusted devices) is deleted.

Setting a Bluetooth® Compatible Device as a Trusted Device

If you set a registered Bluetooth® compatible device as a trusted device, a confirmation window is not displayed and a connection is established when a connection request is received from that device.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Paired Device**

1 Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→[Y!] (Menu)

2 Select *Trust Device*→[■]→*ON*→[■]

Transferring Files via Bluetooth®

Sending Data

1 Access a function that supports Bluetooth®→ Select a file→[Y!] (Menu)→*Send*/*Send vCard*→[■]

2 Select *Via Bluetooth*→[■]

3 Select the destination device→[■]

- If the receiving device is not registered, select [✉] (Search) and then select the receiving device.

Note

- Files without transfer permission and files in Saved Pages cannot be sent.
- Removal of the memory card during a file transfer from the memory card may result in loss or damage of files on the memory card.

Tip

- Depending on the settings of a receiving device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window may appear after selecting the destination device and pressing [■].

Receiving Data

The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth® communication setting (page 10-7) is ***ON***.

1 **In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device→*YES*→■**

- If the device information of the handset is not registered in the destination device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.

2 **Select *YES*→■**

- To reject the reception of files, select ***NO***.
- When the handset receives a Phone Book entry, schedule, task or memo file, select ***YES*** to register it on your Phone Book, schedule, task or memo.

3 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→■**

- To receive another file, repeat Steps 2 and 3.

Note

- The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

Tip

- Return the handset to Standby before receiving a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device.
- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.

Tip

- When files other than vObjects are received, they are registered in a certain folder depending on the file format (extension) (page 9-3). If the handset receives a file with the same name as a file registered in a Data Folder, the name of the received file may be changed.

Sending All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries in your handset, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be sent to another Bluetooth® compatible handset.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Transfer All**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Phone Book*/*Cal.*/*Tasks*→■**

- When sending Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send images registered in the Phone Book. Select ***Without Image*** to send the Phone Book entries without images.
- When you send schedules/tasks, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to send past schedules. Select ***Without Past*** to send schedules without including past schedules.

3 Select the destination device→■

- If the receiving device is not registered, select ✉ (Search) and then select the receiving device.
- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

Receiving All Phone Book Entries/Calendar & Task Data

All the Phone Book entries, schedules on the Calendar or tasks can be received from another Bluetooth® compatible handset.

The handset can receive files when the Bluetooth® communication setting (page 10-7) is ***ON***.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device→*YES*→■

- If the device information of the handset is not registered in the destination device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window appears. Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on the handset and Bluetooth® compatible device.

2 Select *Add*→■

Overwriting All Entries by Received Files

Select ***Overwrite***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Note

- The handset cannot receive files other than when in Standby.

Tip

- While sending/receiving files, Hot Status and Circle Talk cannot be used even if the IP service setting (page 12-5) is ***ON***.

Connecting to an External Device

Connecting to a Handsfree Compatible Device

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Paired Device**

1 Select the handsfree compatible device→Y! (Menu)

- If a handsfree device is not registered, press ✉ (Search) and select a handsfree device to register it to the paired device list (page 10-7).

2 Select *Connect*→■

Tip

- Depending on the settings of the handsfree compatible device, the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) entry window may appear after performing Step 2.
- If a call is received while a handsfree compatible device is connected, the handsfree device uses a ringtone that the handsfree device has, and the handset uses a ringtone according to the settings.

Disconnecting from a Handsfree Device

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Paired Device**

1 Select the handsfree compatible device→ (Menu)

2 Select *Disconnect*→■

Using Bluetooth® for Dial-up Connections

Access Internet via handset using Bluetooth® connection. For details on settings and operations of a Bluetooth® modem compatible device, see the manual of the device.

1 In Standby, receive a connection request from another Bluetooth® compatible device→*YES*→■ →Enter an authentication PIN code→■

- Enter the same authentication PIN code (any 4 to 16 digits) on both the sending and receiving devices.

Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection charges.

Bluetooth® Settings

Displaying Details of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Paired Device**

1 Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→■

Note

- If the connection is initiated by a device, on which the authentication PIN code is entered, and the handset registers the device to the paired device list, a part of the device information is not displayed.

Changing the Name of a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Bluetooth** ▶ **Paired Device**

1 Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→ (Menu) →*Device Name*→■

2 Enter a device name→■

Deleting a Registered Bluetooth® Compatible Device

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Paired Device

1 **Select a Bluetooth® compatible device→ (Menu)**

2 **Select *Delete*→■→*YES*→■**

Showing/Hiding My Handset to Other Devices

Set whether to allow other Bluetooth® devices to find the handset during device search.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Settings

1 **Select *Visibility*→■**

2 **Select *Show/Hide*→■**

- You may still receive a connection request even if Visibility is set to ***Hide***.

Displaying Details of Your Handset

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Settings

Displaying the Device Information of Your Handset

Select ***Details***→■

Changing Device Name of Your Handset

Select ***Device Name***→■→Enter a device name→■

Setting Handsfree

Set the mode for making and receiving calls while a ***handsfree*** compatible device is connected.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Connectivity ▶ Bluetooth ▶ Settings

1 **Select *Set Handsfree*→■**

2 **Select *Handsfree*→■**

- To make and receive regular calls from your handset, select ***Private***.

USB

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC to transfer music files. You can also check the Data Folder of the handset on your PC.

Getting Started

- Install the USB Host Driver and Phone Monitor software before connecting the USB cable. For details on the installation procedure, refer to the USB Host Driver Installation Guide and Phone Monitor Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 912T (CD-ROM).
- For details on the PC operating environments supported, refer to the Phone Monitor Manual on the supplied Utility Software for 912T (CD-ROM).
- When using the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC, be sure to directly insert the plug of the USB cable into the USB port of the PC.
- You cannot use USB functions/settings other than the charge function during infrared communication.

Configuring USB Connection Mode

Configure the mode for using the USB cable to connect a PC to the handset in Standby. Select ***Card Reader*** to transfer music from a PC and select ***Communication*** for a dial-up connection.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **USB** ▶ **Connection**

1 **Select *Communication*/*Card Reader*/*Always Ask*→■**

- Select ***Always Ask*** to choose the connection mode whenever you connect the USB cable in Standby.

Note

- If the handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, the handset changes to ***Communication*** mode even if Connection has been set to ***Card Reader*** or ***Always Ask***.

Transferring Music from a PC to a Memory Card

To transfer music files from a PC to your handset, use Card Reader mode to establish a connection between the PC and your handset.

- Offline mode is set while your handset is in Card Reader mode. When the handset is in offline mode, it cannot make/receive calls, send/receive messages, nor connect to Yahoo! Keitai. In this mode, all the keys are locked.
- Music files cannot be played on the handset unless they are transferred using music transfer software.
- For details on transferring music files, refer to the BeatJam 2007 for 912T Guide Book (Japanese only).

Switching to Card Reader Mode While Connected with USB

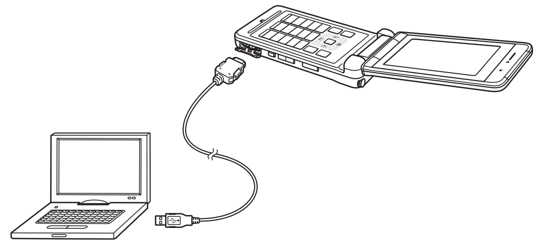
1 Open the handset in Standby and connect it to a PC using the USB cable

- Open the cover of External Device Port and plug in the connector of USB cable with the inscription facing down.

When Connection (page 10-13) is set to *Always Ask*

Select ***Card Reader***→[■]

- If Connection has been set to ***Card Reader***, the confirmation window does not appear when connecting the USB cable.



Note

- If Connection has been set to ***Communication***, the handset does not change to ***Card Reader*** mode when connecting the USB cable in Standby.
- If the handset is not in Standby when connecting the USB cable, the handset changes to ***Communication*** mode even if Connection has been set to ***Card Reader*** or ***Always Ask***.

Tip

- A confirmation window appears while an S! Appli set as the Screensaver is active.
- In the following cases, your handset does not switch to Card Reader mode after connecting to PC with USB cable.
  - Password Lock is activated.
  - Keypad Lock is activated.

Transferring Data

1 Switch your handset to Card Reader mode

2 Follow the instructions on the PC

Note

- Do not remove the memory card while the transferring data window is displayed.

Canceling the Card Reader Mode

1 Use the connected PC's function to remove an external device

2 Remove the USB cable from the handset

Connecting to a PC

Using the USB Cable for Dial-up Connections

Use the USB cable to connect your handset to a PC and then access the Internet, etc. For details on the configuration/operation of the PC modem, refer to the instruction manual for the PC.

Note

- The handset sends a message three times in three minutes to the same device if the receiving device does not respond.
- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection charges.

Using the USB Cable for Charging

While your handset is on, you can charge the battery pack if you connect your handset and a PC using the USB cable. In order to charge the battery of the handset from a PC, turn the battery setting ***ON***.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **USB** ▶ **Battery**

1 Select *ON/OFF*→■

Note

- Charging is not possible while the PC or your handset is turned off.
- Charging may not be possible depending on the connection settings of the PC.
- If the handset and PC are connected with the USB cable, either the PC battery or handset battery is consumed depending on the battery setting, regardless of whether they are communicating data.
  ON: PC battery is used
  OFF: Handset battery is used

Tip

- Compared to using the AC charger or In-Car charger (optional), it may take longer to charge the battery through the USB cable.

11 Settings

Sound Settings

Switching Manner Modes

Manner mode can be selected from the following types. However, the settings for Silent, Alarm and Drive modes are not changeable.

Manner mode	Description
Silent ( )	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker.
Alarms ( )	Mutes all tones emitted through the speaker other than the alarm tone.
Drive ( )	All sounds are disabled and vibration is off. However, sounds are available through earphones. Incoming calls are connected to Answering Machine.
Original 1 to 3 (/ /)	Customizes the manner mode setting. The following items can be set individually: ・Ringtone (Ringtone Vol., Vibration) ・Alarm (Alarm Volume, Vibration) ・Calendar (Alarm Volume, Vibration) ・S! Appli (S! Appli Vol.) ・Sound Vol. ・Effects ・Battery ・Answering Machine

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Manner Mode**

1 **Select *Switch Mode*→■→Select a mode→■**

Settings for Each Type of Manner Mode

Manner mode is set as follows by default:

Item		Silent	Alarms	Drive	Original 1 to 3
Ringtone Vol.	**Voice Call**	Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent
	Video Call				
	Message				
	DeliveryCheck				
	Missed Call				
	Circle Talk				
	Hot Status				
	S! Appli				
	Alarm	Silent	Volume under Alarm Tone (page 13-7)	Silent	Silent
	Calendar	Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent
Vibration	**Voice Call**	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	OFF	Pattern 1
	Video Call				
	Message				
	DeliveryCheck				
	Missed Call				
	Circle Talk				
	Hot Status				

Item		Silent	Alarms	Drive	Original 1 to 3
Vibration (Continued)	**Alarm**	Pattern 1	Vibration under Alarm Tone (page 13-7)	OFF	Pattern 1
	Calendar	Pattern 1	Pattern 1	OFF	Pattern 1
Feeling Settings		Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 11-5)	Vibration under Feeling Settings (page 11-5)	OFF	ON
Sound Vol.		Silent	Silent	Silent	Silent
Effects (Keypad Tone, Power On, Power Off, Opening Tone, Closing Tone)		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Battery*		OFF	OFF	OFF	OFF
Answering Machine		Setting under Answering Machine (page 13-8)	Setting under Answering Machine (page 13-8)	ON	ON

* The alarm is heard from the earpiece only during calls.

Customizing Original Manner Mode

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds** ▶ **Manner Mode**

1 Select *Original Mode*→■

2 Select an original mode you want to set→■

● Select an original mode, press [Menu key] (Menu), and select ***Rename*** to change the name for the original mode.

Setting the Ringtone Volume

Select ***Ringtone***→■→Select an item→■→***Ringtone Vol.***→■→Adjust the volume→■

Setting the Vibration for Voice/Video Calls, Delivery Check, Missed Calls/Circle Talk Calls /Hot Status Notifications

Select ***Ringtone***→■→Select an item→■→***Vibration***→■→Select a vibration pattern→■

Setting the Vibration for Receiving Messages

Select ***Ringtone***→■→***Message***→■→***Vibration***→■→***Pattern***→■→Select a vibration pattern→■

Setting the Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages

Select ***Ringtone***→■→***Message***→■→***Vibration***→■→***Feeling***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select ***Alarm/Calendar***→■→***Alarm Volume***→■→Adjust the volume→■

Setting Vibration for the Alarm

Select ***Alarm/Calendar***→■→***Vibration***→■→Select a vibration pattern →■

Setting the S! Appli Volume
Select ***S! Appli***→■→Adjust the volume→■
Setting the Sound Volume
Select ***Sound Vol.***→■→Adjust the volume→■
Setting the Effects/Battery Alarm/Answering Machine
Select ***Effects/Battery/Machine***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

3 Press ✉ (OK)

Ringtone, Volume & Vibration Settings

Ringtones and ringtone volume can be set for each mode. Some items may not be displayed in some modes.

Ringtone

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Sounds

1 Select *Incoming*→■→Select an item→■

2 Select *Ringtone*→■

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Ringtone
Select ***Patterns/Melodies***→■→Select a ringtone→■
Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Ringtone
Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select a file→■ (twice)

- If the playback start point is included in the selected file, perform the following:
  Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select the file→■→Select the playback start point→■

> **Note**
> - If you use SMAF data which includes an image as a ringtone, the image may not be displayed correctly.

Ringtone Volume

Adjust the ringtone volume in five levels or set to Silent. The ringtone volume can be set so that it gradually goes up (Ascending Volume) or down (Descending Volume).

- The ringtone volume in manner mode (page 11-2) cannot be adjusted.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Sounds

1 Select *Incoming*→■→Select an item→■

2 Select *Ringtone Vol.*→■→Adjust the volume→■

Ring Time

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Sounds

1 Select *Incoming*→■

2 Select *Message/DeliveryCheck/Missed Call/Hot Status*→■→*Duration*→■

Specifying Time by Direct Entry
Select ***Set Duration***→■→Enter the ringing duration (1 to 99 seconds)→■
Playing the Specified File until the End
Select ***1 Cycle***→■

Vibration

Set vibration to notify of incoming calls/messages.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds**

1 **Select *Incoming*→■→Select an item→■**

Setting Vibration for Receiving Messages

Select *Message*→■→*Vibration*→■→*Pattern*→■→Select a vibration pattern→■

Setting Vibration for Receiving Feeling Messages

Select *Message*→■→*Vibration*→■→*Feeling*→■→*ON*/*OFF*→■

2 **Select *Vibration*→■→Select a vibration pattern →■**

Sound Volume

Set the playback volume of melody files and other files or make it silent.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds**

1 **Select *Sound Vol.*→■→Adjust the volume→■**

Earpiece Volume

Adjust earpiece volume.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds**

1 **Select *Earpiece Vol.*→■→Adjust the volume→■**

Tip

- When the volume is adjusted during a call (pages 2-6, 5-3), the volume is reset after the call is terminated.

Speaker Volume

Adjust speaker volume.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds**

1 **Select *Speaker Vol.*→■→Adjust the volume→■**

Sound Effects/Sound Effects Volume

Customize Sound Effects (Keypad tone, Power On/Off tones and Open/Close tones) and adjust volume.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sounds**

1 **Select *Sound Effects*→■→Select an item→■**

2 **Select *Tone Type*→[■]**

Setting the Original Tone Preinstalled in Your Handset
Select ***Original***→[■]
Setting a Melody Preinstalled in Your Handset
Select ***Melodies***→[■]→Select a melody→[■]
Setting a Tone Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card
Select ***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■] (twice)

3 **Select *Tone Volume*→[■]→Adjust the volume→[■]**

Note

- You cannot set files which include an image.

Display Settings

Standby Display

Set the wallpaper and clock for Main Display and the standby display for External Display.

●For details on Date&Time setting, see page 1-20.

Wallpaper (Main Display)

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Idle Screen**

1 **Select *Main Display*→[■]→*Wallpaper*→[■]→*Picture*→[■]**

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Wallpaper
Select ***Preset***→[■] (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Wallpaper
Select ***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■]→Use [✥] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→[■]

Tip

- When you select ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***, you can adjust images, such as resizing and rotating them, by pressing [✉] (Resize) (page 7-25).
- When you select ***Phone Memory*** or ***Memory Card***, you can set an image with a size of W640 × H480 (W480 × H640) or less by pressing [■].

Wallpaper (Animation)

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Idle Screen**

1 **Select *Main Display*→[■]→*Wallpaper*→[■]→*Animation*→[■]→*Image*→[■]**

To Specify the Display Method
Select ***Design***→[■]→Select a pattern→[■] (twice)→[✉] (Set)
To Specify the Display Sequence
Select ***Order***→[■]→Select the display sequence→[■]→[✉] (Set)

2 **Select *Images List*→■→Select an image list→ ■→✉ (Set)**

- Data Folder images must be added to an image list in advance. Up to five frames can be added for each image list.
  Press ✉ (Edit)→Select an image list item→■→***Phone Memory*/*Memory Card***→■→Select an image→■ (twice)→✉ (Set)

To Display the Images in the Selected Folder as an Animation

Select ***Select Folder***→■→Select a folder→■→✉ (Set)

To Specify the Image Preinstalled in the Handset

Select ***Preset***→■→✉ (Set)

Setting Clock (Main Display)

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Idle Screen**

1 **Select *Main Display*→■→*Others*→■→Select a clock type→■ (twice)**

Tip

- If you select ***1-line Digit***, ***2-line Digit***, ***World-Digital*** or ***World-Analog***, the position of the clock and the date/time display can be adjusted with ✥. Also, after pressing ✉ (Color) it is possible to change the font color for the date/time with ↕. However, the date/time display returns to its original position if the ***IdleScreen*** setting under Wide View is changed (page 1-23).

Setting Wallpaper & Clock (External Display)

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Idle Screen**

1 **Select *Ext. Display*→■→Select a clock type→■**

Main Screens

Designs on each screen of the Display can be changed.

Setting the Icons/Images of the Main Screen

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Main Screens**

1 **Select *Deco*/*Deco*→■**

Setting Icons/Images Preinstalled in Your Handset for Screen Decoration

Select ***Original*/*Ku-man***→■ (twice)

Setting Icons/Images Saved to Data Folder for Screen Decoration

Select ***Phone Memory***→■→Select a file for screen decoration →■ (twice)→***YES***→■

Tip

- You can change designs of the Main menu by pressing Y! (Menu) in the Main menu and selecting ***Set Images*** (page 1-22).
- If the Tab View is applied for the Main menu (page 1-22), you can change designs of the Tab View by pressing Y! (Menu) and selecting ***Gamendeco***.

Setting the Image for Incoming Calls

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Main Screens**

1 **Select *In-Calls*→[■]→*Voice Call/Video Call*→[■]**

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Incoming Calls

Select ***Original/Ku-man***→[■] (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Incoming Calls

Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■]→Use [◎] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→[■]

Note

- If you receive a call from a person whose picture is saved to Phone Book and the picture view setting (page 11-9) is ***ON***, the picture is displayed regardless of the incoming image settings. However, if you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, the incoming image is displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 11-4), the incoming image is not displayed.

Setting the Image for Receiving Messages

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Main Screens**

1 **Select *Messages*→[■]→*Receiving/DeliveryCheck*→[■]**

Setting an Image Preinstalled in Your Handset for Receiving Messages

Select ***Original/Ku-man***→[■] (twice)

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card for Receiving Messages

Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■]→Use [◎] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→[■]

Setting the Download/Power On/Power Off Screen

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Main Screens**

1 **Select *Download/Power On/Power Off*→[■]**

2 **Select *Original/Ku-man*→[■] (twice)**

Setting the Display at Once

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Main Screens**

1 **Press [✉] (All) →*Original/Ku-man*→[■]**

Caller ID

Setting the Picture View

Set whether you want a picture to be displayed or not when you receive a voice or a video call from a person who is saved to Phone Book with a picture (page 4-3).

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Caller Details**

1 **Select** ***Picture***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

Note

- When Picture is set to ***ON***, the incoming image is not displayed. If you receive a call from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting (page 4-4) set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode (page 12-5) is set to ***Hide***, the picture is not displayed.
- If a video file is set as a ringtone (page 11-4), the picture is not displayed.

External Display Settings

Set whether to display the caller name that is saved to Phone Book when receiving voice/video calls and messages.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Caller Details**

1 **Select** ***Ext. Display*** →■→***ON/OFF***→■

Switching between the 12-hour and 24-hour Clock

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **12hour/24hour**

1 **Select** ***12 hour/24 hour***→■

Font Settings

The size and color of the text displayed on Display can be changed.

Setting the Font Size

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Font Settings**

1 **Select** ***Font Size***→■→**Select a display you want to set** →■→**Select a font size**→■

Setting the Font Color

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Font Settings**

1 **Select** ***Font Color***→■→**Select a color pattern**→■

Setting the Font Size Collectively

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Font Settings**

1 **Select** ***Font Size***→■→✉ **(All)**→**Select a font size** →■

Setting Ku-man for Standby (Japanese Only)

3D animation character Ku-man is displayed in Standby. Ku-man communicates with you with the various outfits and gestures depending on the season, time of the day, and other conditions.

Main menu ▶ **設定 (Settings)** ▶ **待受くーまん (Idle Screen)**

1 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→■**

Note

- If Language (page 11-11) is set to ***English*** or if it is set to a language other than Japanese for the ***Automatic*** setting, or Live Monitor is selected to display new information (page 13-4), Ku-man cannot be displayed in Standby.
- If Flash® is specified as Wallpaper (page 11-6), Ku-man and Flash® image cannot be displayed at the same time in Standby.

Backlight Settings

Adjust backlight brightness and illumination time.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Backlight**

1 **Select *Displays*→■**

Setting Illumination Time (Main Display)

Select ***Lighting Time***→■→Enter time (0 to 60 seconds)→■

Setting the Brightness

Select ***Brightness***→■→Select a level→■

Media Player Backlight

Set the backlight for playing back movie files and streaming (page 8-10).

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Backlight**

1 **Select *Media Player*→■→*Always ON*/*Always OFF*/*Same as Phone*→■**

Tip

- If you select ***Same as Phone***, the setting follows ***Displays*** (above) of the backlight settings.

Setting the Display Power Saving

Save battery power by setting Display backlight off.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Backlight**

1 **Select *Power Saving*→[■]→Select a display time →[■]**

Keypad Illumination Time

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **Backlight**

1 **Select *Keypad Light*→[■]→Enter time→[■]**

External Light Settings

Missed Call/New Message Notification

If you have unchecked information (missed calls, unread messages and Voice Mail), the external light flashes when your handset is closed. You can set the external light not to flash.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **External Light**

1 **Select *Notification*→[■]**

2 **Select a type of unchecked information→[■]→ Select a color/*OFF*→[■]**

Setting the Incoming External Light

Set the external light to flash when you have an incoming voice call, video call, message or set the external light not to flash.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Display** ▶ **External Light**

1 **Select *Incoming*→[■]**

2 **Select an item→[■]→Select a color/*OFF*→[■]**

Setting the External Light for Receiving Messages

Select ***Message***→[■]→***Color***→[■]→Select a color →[■]

Setting an External Light for Receiving Feeling Messages

Select ***Message***→[■]→***Feeling***→[■]→***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Note

- If the external light (pages 4-4, 4-7) is set for each Phone Book entry, the settings on Phone Book are given priority.

Language Setting

Change the language displayed on your handset.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **言語選択**

1 **Select language→[■]**

- If you select ***Automatic***, the handset selects the language set for the language setting in the USIM card automatically.

Key Settings

Setting the Navigation Key Shortcuts

Change the functions accessed when you press the navigation keys from Standby.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Navigation Keys**

Changing Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press ■ →Select the function you want to assign to ↑ → ■ → Select the function you want to assign to ↓ → ■ → Select the function you want to assign to ← → ■

● The remaining function is assigned automatically to →.

Resetting Functions Assigned to the Navigation Keys

Press Y! (Menu) →***Reset***→ ■ →***YES***→ ■

Setting the Side Key Function

Change the function assigned to the side key. Press and hold the side key in Standby to access the set function.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Side Key**

1 Select *SimpleNotice* (page 13-37)/*Torch*/*My Status* (page 18-7)/*Balance* (page 21-9)→ ■

Sub Menu View Setting

If more than two sub menu items are displayed when pressing Y! (Menu), set the window so that the item selected most recently is displayed on top.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Sub Menu View**

1 Select *Show*/*Hide*→ ■

Note

- This setting is disabled for Circle Talk, Circle Talk Call Log and Hot Status.

11 Settings

Answer Type Settings

Setting Open to Talk

If Open to Talk is set to ***ON***, you can answer an incoming call or Circle Talk call by simply opening your handset.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Answer Type** ▶ **Open to Talk**

1 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→[■]**

Setting Any Key Answer

If Any Key Answer is set to ***ON***, you can answer incoming voice/video calls and Circle Talk calls with any of [0] to [9], [*] and [#], besides [✓], [■] and [video key] (for video call).

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Answer Type** ▶ **Any Keys**

1 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→[■]**

Rejecting Incoming Calls

Set to reject calls with no Caller ID or calls from pay phones. Also reject calls from the specified phone numbers by adding numbers in the rejection list.

Rejecting Specific Incoming Calls

If a call or a Circle Talk call is received from a phone number for which Reject Calls is set, the ringtone does not play and your handset does not vibrate, but Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears and the call can be confirmed in Received Call log (page 2-8).

- If the incoming call barring (page 14-8) is set, the call barring is given priority.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Reject Calls**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

Rejecting Calls from the Specified Phone Numbers

Select ***Specific #s***→[■]→ ***ON*/*OFF***→[■]→ ***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Rejecting Calls from Phone Numbers Not in Phone Book

Select ***Unknown***→[■]→ ***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Select ***Withheld***→[■]→***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Rejecting Calls from Pay Phones

Select ***Payphone***→[■]→***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Rejecting Calls for Which the Caller ID Cannot be Displayed

Select ***Unavailable***→[■]→***ON*/*OFF***→[■]

Adding Phone Numbers to the Rejection List

Add phone numbers to the rejection list to reject calls from those phone numbers.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call Settings ▶ Reject Calls

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *Specific #s*→■→*Reject List*→■

3 Press ✉ (Add)

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select an entry→■→Select a phone number→■ (twice)

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Phone Number***→■→Enter a phone number→■ (twice)

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select ***Call Log***→■→Select a phone number →■ (twice)

Tip

- If a phone number is already added, select ***Reject List*** and press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
  Edit/Delete

Caller ID Setting

Set whether to notify the other party of your phone number when you make a call.

Automatically Hiding/Showing Caller ID

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Call Settings ▶ Show My Number

1 Select *Show My ID*/*Hide My ID*/*OFF*→■

- If you select ***OFF***, the settings you chose when you subscribed to Caller ID service apply.

Note

- Caller ID setting has the following options, and they are given priority in the order of ① to ③ if they are all set or operated.
  ① Pressing Y! (menu) when a phone number is displayed→***Hide My ID/Show My ID***
  ② Setting for Show My Number
  ③ Application for Caller ID service
- For Circle Talk calls, the other party will know your phone number regardless of the settings.

11 Settings

Priority Setting

Set how your handset behaves when it receives a call or message while it is operating.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Priority**

1 Select the function under operation→■

Setting the Priority Operation While Media Player is Playing

Select *Media Player*→■→*Continue*/*Pause*→■

Setting the Priority Operation While S! Appli is Running

Select *S! Appli*→■→Select an item→■→*Pause Apps*/*Continue Apps* →■

Setting the Priority Operation during Circle Talk Session

Select *Circle Talk*→■→*Pause*/*Continue*→■

Setting the Priority Operation While Watching/Recording Digital TV

Select *TV*→■→*Watching*/*Recording*→■→Select an item→■→*Pause*/*Continue*→■

2 Select an item→■

3 Select *Pause*/*Continue*→■

Memory Settings

Confirming the Memory Status

Confirm the memory usage status of your handset and memory card.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory**

1 Select *Memory Status*→■→Select an item→■

- Press [Y!] (Count) to check number of files saved (unavailable when checking memory card capacity).
- For details on formatting a memory card, see page 9-19.

External Device Settings

Set the access point name (APN) of the network information to perform packet transmission from an external device such as a PC. Up to ten access point names (APN) can be set.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **External Device**

1 Select *Empty*→■→Enter the access point name (APN) →■→*YES*→■

Network Settings

Retrieving Network Information

The screen for retrieving network information automatically disappears after you retrieve it once. To change the settings, retrieve network information from the Main menu.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Connectivity** ▶ **Retrieve NW Info**

1 **Select *YES*→■**

12 Security Settings

Changing the Security Code

- Do not forget your security code (page 1-25) and do not reveal it to others. Write down your security code.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ Change Password

1 Enter your current security code (page 1-25)

2 Enter your new security code

3 Re-enter your new security code for confirmation

Setting PINs

Setting PIN Request

Set whether you are requested to enter your PIN (page 1-5) to perform verification each time the power is turned on when a USIM card is inserted in the handset. We recommend you to set to ***ON*** to prevent unauthorized use by a third party.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ PIN Settings

1 Select *ON/OFF*→■→*ON*/*OFF*→■

2 Enter your PIN→■

Changing PINs

Change your PIN/PIN2 (page 1-5). Set PIN Settings (left) to ***ON*** before you change the PIN.

- Do not forget your PINs and do not reveal them to others. Write down your PINs.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ PIN Settings

1 Select *Change PIN*/*Change PIN2*→■

2 Enter your current PIN/PIN2→■

3 Enter your new PIN/PIN2→■

4 Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation →■

Canceling PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN and PIN2 are locked. To cancel PIN Lock/PIN2 Lock, enter a PUK (Personal Unblocking Key) Code. For details on PUK Codes, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

1 **Open a function requiring PIN entry when the PIN/PIN2 lock is set**

2 **Enter the PUK/PUK2→[■]**

3 **Enter your new PIN/PIN2→[■]**

4 **Re-enter your new PIN/PIN2 for confirmation →[■]**

Note

- If the personal unblocking key code (PUK) is incorrectly entered ten times in a row, the USIM lock is set. If the USIM lock is set, it cannot be canceled. Contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Password Lock

Set Password Lock to prevent others from using your handset. When Password Lock is activated, your security code (page 1-25) is required to use the handset. "🔑"indicator and ***Password Lock*** appear in Standby when Password Lock is set to ON.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Password Lock**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

Activating Password Lock When You Close Your Handset

Select ***Phone Closed***→[■]→***ON/OFF***→[■]

Activating Password Lock When Your Handset Goes into Power Saving Mode

Select ***Power Saving***→[■]→***ON/OFF***→[■]

Activating Password Lock When the Handset is Powered On

Select ***Power Off***→[■]→***ON/OFF***→[■]

Note

- To use your handset while Password Lock is activated, enter your security code (page 1-25) to cancel Password Lock temporarily, and then set Password Lock to ***OFF***.
- ***Phone Closed*** locks the handset when you close it in Standby. ***Power Saving*** locks the handset when Display is turned off after a certain amount of time (as set in the power saving settings (page 11-11)) has passed in Standby.
- You cannot make a one-touch call from the Earphone-Microphone while the handset is locked with Password Lock.

Tip

- When the Password Lock is activated, you can still perform the following operations.
  - Turn the power on and off.
  - Enter the PIN if the ***PIN Settings*** (page 12-2) is set to ***ON***.
  - Cancel the Password Lock temporarily.
  - Make calls to 110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard).
  - Answer voice calls and video calls (but the Open to Talk and Any Key Answer functions are unavailable).
  - Answer Circle Talk calls (but the Any Key Answer function is unavailable).
  - Stop the alarm (page 13-8).
  - Stop the schedule alarm (page 13-18).
  - Turn Answering Machine on for incoming voice calls (page 2-5).
  - Place calls on hold (page 2-4).
  - Divert calls (page 14-3).
  - Reject calls (page 2-6).
  - Adjust the ringtone volume while a call is being received (pages 2-4, 5-3).
  - Pause the S! Appli set as the Screensaver (page 17-6).
- When the Password Lock is activated, Information Prompt (page 1-11) does not appear.
- " 🔑 " indicator and ***Password Lock*** are not displayed in Standby, if the Password Lock is temporarily canceled after it is set to ***ON***.

Function Lock

Set Function Lock to prevent unauthorized access to Phone Book, Calendar, Tasks functions, Call Log and Sent/Received Log. When Function Lock is set, your security code (page 1-25) must be entered to access these functions/ features.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Function Lock**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select a function→■→*Lock*/*Unlock*→■**

Setting Secret Mode

Set whether to show Phone Book entries saved as secret (page 4-4). "[icon]" indicator appears when Secret Mode is set to ***Show***.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Secret Mode**

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *Show*/*Hide*→ ■

Note

- Secret Mode is set to ***Hide*** if handset power is turned off.

Tip

- If you receive a call or message from a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ***ON*** when Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***, only the caller's phone number or sender's email address is displayed.
- If a Phone Book entry with Secret Setting set to ***ON*** is saved to Hot Status Members List, the person's current status (Hot Status information) is not displayed when Secret Mode is set to ***Hide***.

IP Service Setting

Set whether to use Hot Status and Circle Talk.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **IP Service**

1 Select *ON*/*OFF*→ ■

Note

- Before setting the IP service, you need to retrieve the network connection information (page 1-19).

Keypad Lock

Keypad Lock allows you to disable the keys to prevent unintentional operations while your handset is in your bag or pocket. " " indicator appears when Keypad Lock is set.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 In Standby, press and hold ■

Canceling Keypad Lock

1 Press and hold ■ while the Keypad Lock is set

Note

- Keypad Lock cannot be set when Bluetooth®/infrared communication is activated.
- When Keypad Lock is set, Information Prompt (page 1-11) does not appear.

Hold

The hold function prevents unintentional operations while your handset is closed. " " indicator appears on the External Display when Hold is set.

Setting Hold

1 Press and hold HOLD when your handset is closed

Canceling Hold

1 Press and hold HOLD while the hold is set and your handset is closed

Note

- When the battery level is low, Hold is not set.

Tip

- Hold is disabled while a voice/video call or Circle Talk call is being received.

12 Security Settings

Reset Settings

Settings and data that will be reset are as follows:

Item	Description
Reset All	Return all settings to their defaults and delete all data stored in the handset.
Reset Setting	Reset all the settings to the default.
Clear Memory	Delete all the Phone Book entries, data in Data Folder, and messages.
Confirmation	If you select ***Notify Only Once***, and you want to display a confirmation window again, reset the notification setting to the default so that a confirmation window appears again.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security** ▶ **Reset**

1 **Select an item→■**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→■**

The selected data and settings are reset (initialized), and the handset restarts automatically.

Note

- Files or information saved in USIM Card and memory card are not restored after resetting handset.
- ***Reset All*** and ***Clear Memory*** cannot be performed when there is data created by a Lifestyle-Appli on the IC card. Delete the data created with the Lifestyle-Appli and then perform reset operations again.
- Performing ***Reset All*** or ***Clear Memory*** deletes some preinstalled S! Appli and other contents, which cannot be restored to the same status as when the handset was purchased.

Tip

- The security code is initialized after reset all.
- A confirmation window will appear if the IC card is locked (page 21-5). ***Reset All*** and ***Clear Memory*** cannot be performed without releasing the IC card lock.

Restricted Mode

Restricting Internet Connection

Set the handset so it cannot be connected to the Internet by inputting a URL (pages 16-4, 16-5).

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ Restricted Mode ▶ Web

1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-25) →■

When Your Internet Security Code is not Registered

Press ■→Enter your new Internet security code→■→Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation→■→***Do not Save*** →■

- To register a clue to your Internet security code, select ***Save*** and enter a clue.

2 Select *Set Regulation*→■→*ON*→■

Changing Internet Security Code

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Security ▶ Restricted Mode ▶ Web

1 Enter your Internet security code (page 1-25) →■

2 Select *Change Password*→■ (twice)

3 Enter your new Internet security code→■

4 Re-enter your new Internet security code for confirmation→■

5 Select *Save*/*Do not Save*→■

Registering a Clue to Your Internet Security Code

Select ***Save***→■→Enter a clue→■

13 Convenient Functions

Active Window

Save people to the Members List, and make calls, send messages and initiate Circle Talk calls to them from Active Window. Check the latest information of Live Monitor and weather forecast in Active Window.

Active Window can be easily switched between Shortcut mode and Communication mode.



Shortcut Mode



Communication Mode

①**Members List**

Your current status (My Status) (page 18-7) is displayed on the top. Set an icon or a photo for each member. Save members from Hot Status Members List to view their status. Make calls, send messages or initiate Circle Talk in Communication mode (page 13-4).

②**Live Monitor (Shortcut mode only)**

Displays newly received information and images.

③**Weather Indicator (Shortcut mode only)**

Opening Active Window

1 In Standby, press (twice)

- Press (Switch) to toggle between Shortcut and Communication modes.

Tip

- Active Window opens in the previously displayed mode.
- Press (Menu) while Active Window is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the mode and the position of the cursor):
  Settings/View/Change Member/Change Icon/Edit List/Main Menu/Mail/Yahoo! Keitai

Members List

Add members to Members List from Hot Status Members List or Phone Book to view their status in Active Window. A maximum of five people can be saved to the Members List.

It is possible to change and delete members, change the icons, and display your own Hot Status information (My Status) (page 18-7).

Saving People to the Members List

1 In Active Window, select an empty item→[■] (Save)

To Change a Member

Select the member you want to change→[Y!] (Menu)→***Change Member***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

2 Select *Hot Status*/*Phone Book*→[■]→Select a member→[■]

Tip

- To add a member from the Hot Status Members List, you need to save the person to the Hot Status Members List first (page 18-4).

Editing the Members List

1 In Active Window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Edit List*→[■]

2 Select a member→[■]→*YES*→[■]

To Save a New Member

Select ***Not Registered***→[■]

3 Select *Hot Status*/*Phone Book*→[■]→Select a member→[■]

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) while a member is selected in the Edit List window to perform the following:
  Delete*/*Delete All

Changing Icons

1 In Active Window, select a member→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change Icon*→[■]

2 Select *Phone Book*/*Icon*→[■]→Select a photo or an icon→[■]

Setting My Status Display

Set whether or not to display your Hot Status information (My Status) (page 18-7).

1 In Active Window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Edit List*→[■]

2 Select *My Status*→[■] (ON/OFF)

Displaying Hot Status Information

Display members' or your own Hot Status information.

1 In Standby, press (twice)

In Shortcut Mode

Use to select a member→

In Communication Mode

Use to select a member→ (Menu)→***View***→

Tip

- If My Status is selected in Communication mode, press to display the My Status window (page 18-7).
- Hot Status information is not displayed if the person is not saved to Hot Status Members List or if they have been deleted from the list.

Contacting Members

In Communication mode, contact members by directly calling, sending a message or making a Circle Talk call.

1 In Active Window, use to select a member

2 Use to select the contact method→

To make a call
To create and send a message
To make a Circle Talk call

Live Monitor

Check the details of newly received information displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.

When new information is received, " " is displayed in Standby.

- The content registered in ***Live Monitor*** under ***Yahoo! Keitai*** (page 16-17) is displayed in the Live Monitor in Shortcut mode.

1 In Active Window, use to select the Live Monitor→

- Press (Update) to update to the latest information. Press (Access) to display the selected site.

Note

- If the reception of new information fails, Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears. While the Live Monitor list (page 16-17) is displayed, press (Menu) and then select ***Update*** to receive the information again.

Tip

- To change the site to be displayed in the Live Monitor, press (Menu) → ***Settings*** → ***Live Monitor*** (page 16-17).
- You can set the information to be automatically updated to the latest (page 13-5).

13 Convenient Functions

Weather Information

Check weather forecast in Shortcut mode.

1 **In Active Window, use [key] to select the Weather Indicator→[key]**

Setting Active Window

Set Active Window display in Shortcut mode.

Setting Active Window Template

Set whether to display both Hot Status information and news, or just Hot Status information or news in Active Window.

1 **In Active Window, press [key] (Menu)→*Settings*→[key] →*Templates*→[key]**

2 **Select *Status/News*/*Hot Status*/*News*→[key]**

Setting Automatic Update

Set to automatically update the information displayed in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

The time interval for the automatic updates can be set from ***Flash News*** (1/2/4/8 hours), ***News*** (24 hours), and ***S! Loop*** (4 hours).

1 **In Active Window, press [key] (Menu)→*Settings*→[key] →*Display*→[key]**

2 **Select *Auto Refresh*→[key]→*Flash News*/*News*/ *S! Loop*→[key]**

To Set Flash News to Update Automatically

Select the time interval for the automatic update→[key]→[key]→[key] →*YES*→[key]

● If you select ***Manual***, Flash News is not updated automatically.

To Set News/S! Loop to Update Automatically

Select ***Automatic*** →[key]→[key]→[key]→*YES* →[key]

● If you select ***Manual***, News/S! Loop are not updated automatically.

Note

- Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list updates do not take place during late hours at night.
- Automatic update may not occur if your handset is outside the service area or signal reception is poor.
- If automatic updates stop for some reason, performing a manual update (page 13-4) can restart the automatic updates.

Tip

- You can also set the automatic update by the following operation.
  Main menu → ***Yahoo! Keitai*** → ***Live Monitor*** → ***Settings*** → ***Auto Refresh***

Setting the New Information Displayed in Active Window

Set whether to display all the newly arrived information or just the unread information in Active Window.

1 **In Active Window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■] →*Display*→[■]**

2 **Select *Unread/Read*→[■]**

3 **Select *Unread Only* or *Show All*→[■]**

Tip

- If you select ***Unread Only***, the ticker is not displayed until the next new information arrives when there is no unread information.

Setting the Ticker Speed

Set the scroll speed and the shifting rate of the newly arrived information displayed in tickers in the Live Monitor in Active Window.

1 **In Active Window, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■] →*Display*→[■]**

2 **Select *Screen Speed*→[■]→Select a speed→[■]**

Alarms

An alarm name, alarm time, ring setting, repeat setting, snooze setting can be set to alarm setting. The "⏰" indicator appears in Standby when Alarm is set. At the set time, the alarm tone, vibration and image display are activated. The External Light also flashes.

Setting Alarms

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Alarms**

1 **Select an alarm→[■]**

Setting an Alarm Name

Select an alarm name→[■]→Enter an alarm name→[■]

Setting an Alarm Time

Select ***Time***→[■]→Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system→[■]

2 **Press [✉] (OK)→*OK*→[■]**

Alarm is set.

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.
- Press [✉] (ON/OFF) to turn off the alarm you have set.

Note

- Alarms do not sound when the handset power is OFF.

Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-28) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned ***ON*** or ***Date&Time*** setting (page 1-20) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Setting the Alarm Tone/Alarm Volume/Vibration/Ringing Duration/Image

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Alarms**

1 **Select an alarm→[■]**

2 **Select *Alarm Tone*→[■]**

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as an Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Patterns/Melodies***→[■]→Select an alarm tone →[■]

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as an Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■] (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Time Reading***→[■]

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select ***Volume***→[■]→Adjust the alarm volume→[■]

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select ***Vibration***→[■]→Select a vibration pattern→[■]

- If you select ***Link to Sound*** for the vibration pattern, the handset vibrates with the melody (only melody files that vibrate the handset with the SMAF format) which is set as an alarm.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select ***Duration***→[■]→Enter an alarm duration→[■]

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→[■]→***Original***→[■]

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select an image →[■]→Use [✣] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→[■]

3 **Press [✉] (OK)→[✉] (OK)→*OK*→[■]**

Tip

- When manner mode is set to ***Drive*** (page 11-2), the alarm does not sound and the vibrator does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the alarm vibration setting for the Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to ***OFF***.

Setting the Repeat/Snooze

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Alarms**

1 **Select an alarm→[■]**

Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select ***Once***→[■]→Select an item→[■]

- When you select ***Weekly***, specify which days to start the alarm. Press [■] to check/remove mark → [✉] (OK)

Setting the Snooze

Select ***Snooze***→■→***ON/OFF***→■→Enter an interval between alarm tones→■

● If the snooze is set to ***ON***, the alarm plays in specified intervals up to five additional times.

Deleting Alarms

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Alarms

Deleting One Alarm

Select an alarm→[Menu key] (Menu)→***Reset***→■→***YES***→■

Deleting All Alarms

Press [Menu key] (Menu)→***Reset All***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Alarm Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is going

Returning to Standby

Stop alarm→[POWER]

Stopping Snooze and Returning to Standby

Stop alarm→***Stop Snooze***→■→***YES***→■

Answering Machine

This feature can record a caller's message when you are unable to answer a voice call. The "[indicator]" indicator appears in Standby when the Answering Machine is set to ***ON***. Your handset can store up to five messages and each message can be up to 30 seconds long.

Setting the Answering Machine

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Ans Machine

1 Select *Setting*→■

2 Select *ON/OFF*→■

● You can also set the Answering Machine if you press and hold [クリア/メモ] in Standby.

Note

- Messages may not be recorded when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver (page 17-6).
- Answering Machine is not available for video calls and Call Waiting (page 14-6).
- When manner mode (Drive/Original Mode) is set, Answering Machine settings in Drive/Original Mode (page 11-4) are given priority. If you set or cancel Answering Machine while manner mode (Drive/Original Mode) is set, change the Answering Machine settings in Original Mode.
- If your handset receives a call when the ***Ans Machine*** is ***OFF***, and you recorded a message by pressing and holding [クリア/メモ], the ***Ans Machine*** turns to ***ON*** after the call automatically.

Tip

- When the Auto Answer (page 13-40) is ***ON***, the Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you press ■ while the handset is playing an answering message or a caller is recording a message, you can talk with the caller.
- If you press Y! (🔊) while a message is being recorded, you can listen to the message through the speaker.

Setting the Ringing Duration

Specify the length of the time that the handset receives a call to the time the answer message activates.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Ans Machine**

1 **Select *Set Duration*→■**

2 **Enter the ringing duration→■**

Playing/Deleting Messages

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Ans Machine**

Playing a Message

Select ***Recordings***→■→Select a message→■

- Unheard recorded messages have " 📼 " displayed. Messages you have heard have " 📼 " displayed.

Deleting a Message

Select ***Recordings***→■→Select a message→Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→■→***YES***→■

Notepad

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Notepad**

1 **Select the notepad to which the content is not stored→■→Enter the contents of the memo→■**

Tip

- To edit the stored content, press ✉ (Edit) after selecting the notepad.
- If the contents are already stored, select the notepad and press Y! (Menu) to perform the following: ***Delete***/***Set Category***/***Export***/***As Mail***

Setting the Category Icon According to the Contents of the Notepad

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Notepad**

1 **Select a notepad→Y! (Menu)→*Set Category*→■**

2 **Select a category→■**

The icon of the selected category is displayed.

Calculator

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calculator**

Key	Function	Key	Function
[0] ~ [9]	Enter Numbers	[●]	=
[Up]	+	[Switch key]	Switch +/–
[Down]	–	[Mail]	Tax
[Left]	×	[クリア/メモ]	C (Clear)
[Right]	÷	[Decimal key]	Decimal
[POWER]	EXIT		

Tip

- To calculate tax, enter amount and press [Mail]. Tax appears in red. Press [Mail] again to view tax added amount in green.
- Press [Y!] (Menu) for other calculator options:
  Converter: Enter the currency exchange rate and then perform currency conversion calculations.
  Clear All: Delete the input value and data stored in memory.
  MS: Save the input value to memory.
  M+: Add the input value to the value stored in memory.
  MR: Display the value stored in memory.
  %: Calculate a percentage.
  1/X: Calculate a reciprocal.
  SQRT: Calculate a square root.
  Set Tax Rate: Set the tax rate when you press [Mail]. Enter the tax rate and press [●].

Converter

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calculator**

1. **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Converter*→[●]→*Exchange Rate*→[●]→*Main Currency/Sub Currency*→[●]**
2. **Enter the exchange rate→[●]→[クリア/メモ] (three times)**
3. **Enter an amount→[Y!] (Menu)→*Converter*→[●]→*To Main/To Sub*→[●]**

Dictionary

The dictionary data (*辞スパ*(Jispa)) on the handset include a Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), English-Japanese dictionary (approximately 40,000 entries), and a Japanese-English dictionary (approximately 36,000 entries).

"Jispa" of Gakken Co., Ltd. is bundled as Japanese dictionary, English-Japanese dictionary and Japanese-English dictionary.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Dictionary**

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in Japanese

Select ***Japanese***→[■]→[文字]→Enter a keyword→[■]→Select a word →[■]

Entering an English word to look up its meaning in Japanese

Select ***English-Japanese***→[■]→[文字]→Enter a keyword→[■]→ Select a word→[■]

Entering a Japanese word (kanji or reading) to look up its meaning in English

Select ***Japanese-English***→[■]→[文字]→Enter a keyword→[■]→ Select a word→[■]

Tip

- You can switch dictionaries by pressing [✉] (Switch) while a word is selected. You can see the meaning of a word by selecting the word and pressing [■].
- While a word is selected, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Word Search/Clear Word/To Word List/Copy Header***
- After selecting a word and pressing [■], press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Copy Meanings/Copy Header***

Calendar

Up to 400 events (up to 100 events a day) can be saved to Calendar. If Calendar is set to appear in Standby (Idle Screen, page 11-7), indicators appear on the days of a scheduled event.

Opening Calendar

Set to open Calendar in Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View or All View.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 Press [文字]→Select a calendar view format

- You can switch the calendar view between Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, 4-Month View and All View.

Tip

- Alternatively, press and hold [◘] in Standby to view Calendar.

Using Information Registered in the Event

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the Event. You can refer to messages, websites, and images.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Calendar

1 **Select a day→■→Select an event→■**

2 **Select an item→■**

Making a Call to the Stored Phone Number

Press ■→***Voice Call***→■→☒ (Menu)→***Voice Call/Video Call***→■

Sending a Message to the Stored Phone Number

Press ■→***Create Mail***→■→Create a message

- See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 15-10) about the following operations.

Sending a Message to the Stored Email Address

Press ■→Create a message

- See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Connecting to the Stored URL

Press ■→***YES***→■

Referring to the Message Which has been Linked

Select ***To Messages***→■

Referring to the Web Page Which has been Linked

Select ***To Saved Pages***→■

Referring to the Picture Which has been Linked

Select ***To Pictures***→■

Using Registered Phone Numbers and Email Addresses in Contents

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Calendar

1 **Select a day→■→Select an event→■**

2 **Select an item in *Contents*→■**

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Press ■→***Voice Call***→■→☒ (Menu)→***Voice Call/Video Call***→■

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number

Press ■→***Create Mail***→■→***Create***→■→Create a message

- See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) or "Creating & Sending an SMS Message" (page 15-10) about the following operations.

Sending a Message to the Selected Email Address

Press ■→***Create Mail***→■→***Create***→■→Create a message

- See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Press ■→***Save Sender***→■→***Add New/Add***→■→Add a Phone Book entry

- See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

What can you do on Monthly View/Monthly&Event View/4-Month View Window?



Monthly View Window

In the calendar window, the cursor is in orange, and "▪ " shows that an event is registered. In this window, an icon is displayed on a day that an event is registered.

Go to the previous month by pressing *. In the 4-Month View window, the previous 4 months are shown.

Go to the next month by pressing #. In the 4-Month View window, the next 4 months are shown.

Press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete: Delete events by selecting ***For this Day***, ***Before Today*** or ***All***.
Set Holiday: Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the week.
To Tasks: Open Tasks Window.
Jump: Jump to the specific day.
Settings: Use Reminder (page 13-19), set the Calendar Lock (page 13-18), set the First View (page 13-19), and set text colors (page 13-19).

What can you do on Weekly View Window?

In the Weekly View window, the cursor is in orange. A starting time and an event title are displayed on the date that an event is registered.

Go to the previous week by pressing *.

Go to the next week by pressing #.

Press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:

Delete: Delete events by selecting ***For this Day***, ***Before Today*** or ***All***.
Set Holiday: Change display colors of a specified date or a day in the week.
To Tasks: Open Tasks Window.
Jump: Jump to the specific day.
Settings: Use Reminder (page 13-19), set the Calendar Lock (page 13-18), set the First View (page 13-19), and set text colors (page 13-19).

What can you do on Daily View Window?

Go to yesterday by pressing ＊.
Go to tomorrow by pressing #.
If ***Not Completed*** is displayed, unfinished tasks can be displayed by pressing ■.
Press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
Edit: Edit the selected event.
Delete: Delete events by selecting ***One*** or ***For this Day***.
Export: Export the selected event to ***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***.
Send: Send the selected event as an ***As Mail***/***Via Infrared***/***Via Bluetooth***.
Jump: Jump to the specific day.

What can you do on All View Window?

Press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
Edit: Edit the selected event.
Delete: Delete events by selecting ***One***, ***Select Multi*** or ***All***.
Search: Search for events by specifying a stamp icon.
Export: Export the selected event to ***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***.
Send: Send the selected event as an ***As Mail***/***Via Infrared***/***Via Bluetooth***.
Settings: Use Reminder (page 13-19), set the Calendar Lock (page 13-18), set the First View (page 13-19), and set text colors (page 13-19).

Adding a New Event

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press ✉ (Create)**

Entering a Title of the Event

Select ***Title***→●→Entering a title→●

Setting the Start Date and Time for the Event

Select ***Start Date***→●→***Date&Time***/***Date Only***→●→Enter date and time→●

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.
- Enter only the date, when you selected ***Date Only***.

Setting the End Date and Time for the Event

Select ***End Date***→●→Enter date and time→●

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

2 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Tip

- You can store events from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The events on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- You cannot store your events without entering ***Title*** or ***Contents***.
- Press Y! (Menu) while registering an event to perform the following operations (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):
  Reset/***To Call***

Setting the Alarm

Set Alarm to notify you of a scheduled event. When the scheduled time arrives; alarm tone or time announcement sounds, handset vibrates and alarm image/date/time/event name appear on Display.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press ✉ (Create)→*Alarm*→●**

2 **Select *ON*→●**

Setting an Alarm Date and Time

Select ***Time***→●→Enter an alarm date and time→●

- Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select ***Duration***→●→Enter a ringing duration→●

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→●→***Patterns***/***Melodies***→●→Select an alarm tone→●

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→●→***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→●→Select a file→● (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select ***Tone***→●→***Time Reading***→●

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select ***Volume***→●→Adjust the alarm volume→●

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select ***Vibration***→●→Select a vibration pattern→●

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→■→***Original***→■

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→■→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→■→Select an image →■→Use [navigation key] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→■

3 **Press [✉] (OK)→[✉] (OK)→*OK*→■**

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Tip

- When the time set for an alarm is reached, alarm will play even if you are operating the handset. However, if the time set for an alarm is reached during a call, while taking a picture or recording a video or during data communication, the alarm plays after the call, taking of a picture or recording of a video, or communication ends.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 11-2) is set to ***Silent***; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to ***Silent***.
- When manner mode (page 11-2) is set to ***Drive***, the alarm does not sound and handset does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 11-3) are ***OFF*** for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-28) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned ***ON*** or ***Date&Time*** setting (page 1-20) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Other Settings

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press [✉] (Create)**

Setting the Stamp Icon

Select ***Stamp Icon***→■→Select the stamp icon→■

Entering Contents

Select ***Contents***→■→Enter contents→■

Setting a Phone Number/Email Address/URL

Select ***Phone Number/Address/URL***→■→Enter a phone number/email address/URL→■

- You can make a voice call or video call, create a message, and connect to a website on the details window of events (page 13-12).

Setting Link to a Message/Website/Image

Select ***Messages/Saved Pages/Pictures***→■→Select a message/web page/image→■

- You can look up messages/websites/images that you set in the details window of event (page 13-12).

Setting a Location

Select ***Location***→■→Enter location information→■

Displaying/Hiding Events

Select ***Options***→■→***Show/Hide***→■→***Show/Hide***→■

Setting the Alarm to Repeat at a Specified Interval

Select ***Options***→■→***Repeat for***→■→***Do not Repeat/Daily/Weekly/Monthly/Yearly/End of Month***→■→Enter a repeat duration→■

Setting a Category of the Event

Select ***Options***→■→***Category***→■→Select a category→■

Note

- If you set the start date to the last day of the month, you can set the Repeat for setting to ***End of Month***.
- If an event set to repeat daily, weekly, etc. is deleted, a message asks if you wish to cancel repeat features. Select ***Do not Repeat*** to delete the event for that day only.
- Canceling a single date of a repeated event may not be effective if the event is sent (page 9-12) and received by another device.

Tip

- To repeat infinitely, enter "00".
- If you set ***Monthly*** for the 30th or 31st, the repetition is only set for months that include that date.
- If you set ***Hide*** for event display/hide, your security code needs to be entered to view or edit events. Only " " is displayed on the calendar window, and no icon is displayed on the calendar in Standby.

Editing the Events

The stored events can be edited.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Select a date→●**

2 **Select an event→Y! (Menu)→*Edit*→●**

3 **Select an item→●→Edit the item→●**

4 **Press ✉ (OK)→*Overwrite*/*Save as New*→●**

Deleting Events

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

Deleting One Event

Select a date→●→Select an event→Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→●→***One***→●→***YES***→●

Deleting All of Today's Events

Select a date→●→Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→●→***For this Day***→●→***YES***→●

Deleting All Previous Events

Press Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→●→***Before Today***→●→***YES***→●

Deleting All Events

Press Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→●→***All***→●→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→●

Deleting Multiple Events

Press ▭→Switch to the All View→Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→●→***Select Multi***→●→Select events→●→✉ (Delete)→***YES***→●

Alarm Date & Time

The alarm stops automatically after a set duration, but you can also stop it manually.

1 Press any button while the alarm is sounding

Returning to Standby

Stop alarm→[POWER]

Checking the Event Details

Stop alarm→[✉] (View)

Jumping to the Specified Date

Enter a date and then display the events for that date. This function cannot be used from the All View window.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Calendar

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Jump*→[●]

2 Enter a date→[●]

Setting the Calendar Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-25) in order to browse the Calendar.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Calendar

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[●]→*Calendar Lock*→[●]

2 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

3 Select *Lock*/*Unlock*→[●]

Note

- If you set Calendar Lock to ***Lock***, an event title is not displayed when the alarm sounds (page 13-15). The Details window cannot be viewed either.

Changing the Colors of Dates and Days of the Week

Change colors of specified dates and days of the week on the Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, and 4-Month View, and on the calendar displayed in Standby if you set Calendar in Idle Screen setting (page 11-7).

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Calendar

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Date

Select a date→[Y!] (Menu)→***Set Holiday***→[●]→***Current Day***→[●]→Select a color/***Deactivate***→[●]

Changing the Color for Displaying a Specified Day of the Week

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Set Holiday***→[●]→***Select Week***→[●]→Select the day of the week→[●]→Select a color→[●]→[✉] (OK)

Tip

- If you set colors both in ***Current Day*** and ***Select Week***, colors set in ***Current Day*** are given priority.

Using Reminder

Reminder sets off the alarm at a specified time, and displays events and tasks (page 13-20) of today or the following day.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press ☒ (Menu)→*Settings*→■→*Reminder*→■→*ON*→■**

Setting Display

Select *Today*→■→*Today*/*Tomorrow*→■

Setting Remainder Alarm Time

Select *Time*→■→Enter a time→■

● Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select *Set Alarm*→■→*Tone*→■→*Patterns*/*Melodies*→■→Select an alarm tone→■

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select *Set Alarm*→■→*Tone*→■→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→■→Select a file→■ (twice)

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select *Set Alarm*→■→*Volume*→■→Adjust the alarm volume→■

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select *Set Alarm*→■→*Vibration*→■→Select a vibration pattern→■

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select *Set Alarm*→■→*Duration*→■→Enter a ringing duration→■

Setting Alarm Repeats

Select *Once*→■→Select an item→■

2 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Setting First View

Select from Monthly View, Monthly&Event View, Weekly View, or 4-Month View for the event view window at the time of launch of the calendar.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press ☒ (Menu)→*Settings*→■→*First View*→■**

2 **Select a calendar view format→■**

Setting the Text Color

Set text colors and border colors on the Daily View/All View window.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Calendar**

1 **Press ☒ (Menu)→*Settings*→■→*Font Color*→■**

2 **Select a color→■**

Tasks

Up to 100 tasks can be stored on the task list. View the entire tasks in a list format, or separately by Not Completed and Completed. Also set priorities and categories.

Adding Task Items

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tasks

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Create New*→[■]

Entering a Title

Select ***Title***→[■]→Enter a title→[■]

Setting a Due Date and Time

Select ***Deadline***→[■]→Enter a due date and time→[■]

● Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

2 Press [✉] (OK)

Tip

- You can store tasks from 2000/01/02 to 2015/12/30. The tasks on and after 2015/12/30 that you saved using another SoftBank handset cannot be used on this handset.
- Entry of ***Title*** or ***Contents*** field is required to save a task.

Setting the Alarm

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Tasks

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Create New*→[■]→*Alarm*→[■]

2 Select *ON*→[■]

Setting an Alarm Time

Select ***Time***→[■]→Enter an alarm time→[■]

● Enter an alarm time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

Setting an Alarm Duration

Select ***Duration***→[■]→Enter a ringing duration→[■]

Setting a Sound Preinstalled in Your Handset as the Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Patterns/Melodies***→[■]→Select an alarm tone →[■]

Setting a Sound Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card as the Alarm Tone

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select a file→[■] (twice)

Setting the Time Reader as an Alarm

Select ***Tone***→[■]→***Time Reading***→[■]

Setting the Alarm Volume

Select ***Volume***→[■]→Adjust the alarm volume→[■]

Setting the Alarm Vibration

Select ***Vibration***→[■]→Select a vibration pattern→[■]

Displaying the Original Image at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→[■]→***Original***→[■]

Displaying an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card at the Setting Time

Select ***Image***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select an image→[■]→Use [◆] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[Y!] (Cut)→[■]

3 Press [✉] (OK)→[✉] (OK)→*OK*→[■]

- If you select ***Notify Only Once*** when a confirmation window telling that the alarm will not start if the power is off appears, this window will not be displayed from the next time.

Tip

- For details on alarm notifications, see page 13-15. For details on stopping alarm, see page 13-18.
- Alarm does not sound when: Manner mode (page 11-2) is set to ***Silent***; or Calendar alarm volume for Original Mode (page 11-3) is set to ***Silent***.
- When manner mode (page 11-2) is set to ***Drive***, the alarm does not sound and handset does not vibrate.
- The handset does not vibrate when the vibration settings for the calendar (page 11-3) are ***OFF*** for Original Mode of manner mode.
- When you change the Main City (page 13-28) for the World Clock, the alarms are updated to match the time of the newly set city. And if DST (Daylight Saving Time) is turned ***ON*** or ***Date&Time*** setting (page 1-20) is changed, then the alarms are also updated.

Other Settings

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tasks**

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Create New*→[■]

Setting the Stamp Icon

Select ***Stamp Icon***→[■]→Select the stamp icon→[■]

Entering Contents

Select ***Contents***→[■]→Enter contents→[■]

Displaying/Hiding Tasks

Select ***Options***→[■]→***Show/Hide***→[■]→***Show/Hide***→[■]

Setting Priority

Select ***Options***→[■]→***Priority***→[■]→Select a priority→[■]

Setting Status of Tasks

Select ***Options***→[■]→***Status***→[■]→Select a status of task→[■]

2 Press [✉] (OK)

Tip

- If you set ***Hide*** for task display/hide, your security code (page 1-25) needs to be entered to view or edit tasks. Only " 🔑 " is displayed on the Tasks window, and title and deadline are not displayed on the Tasks window.

Opening Tasks

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tasks**

Changing the View Format of the Task List

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Change View***→[●]→Select the view format →[●]

Changing the Status of Tasks

Select a task→[✉] (Status)→***Not Completed/Completed/Overdue*** →[●]

Tip

- From the task list, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Create New/Edit/Delete/Change View/Sort by/Search/ To Calendar/Export/Send/Settings***

Using Information Registered in the Tasks

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website by using a phone number, email address, or URL registered in the tasks.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tasks**

1 **Select a task→[●]→Select contents including information→[●]**

2 **Select the information→[●]**

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select ***Voice Call***→[●]→[Y!] (Menu)→***Voice Call/Video Call*** →[●]

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select ***Create Mail***→[●]→***Create***→[●]→Create a message

- See "Creating & Sending an S! Mail" (page 15-5) about the following operations.

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select ***Save Sender***→[●]→***Add New/Add***→[●]→Add a Phone Book entry

- See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Connection to the Selected URL

Select ***Connect***→[●]

- If you have selected a URL including location information, select ***Web Access/Navi Appli/To Locations***.

Deleting Tasks

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tasks**

Deleting One Task

Select a task→ [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→ [■] →***One***→ [■] →***YES*** → [■]

Deleting All Tasks

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→ [■] →***All***→ [■] →Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→ [■]

- You can delete all tasks from the All View window.

Deleting Multiple Tasks

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→ [■] →***Select Multi***→ [■] →Select tasks → [■] → [✉] (Delete)→***YES***→ [■]

Setting the Tasks Lock

Set the handset so that it asks for the security code (page 1-25) in order to browse the Tasks list.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Tasks**

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→ [■] →*Tasks Lock*→ [■]

2 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

3 Select *Lock/Unlock*→ [■]

Time Table

Time table from Monday to Saturday can be created. Subjects, classrooms, and font colors of up to eight classes can be registered.

Registering a Time Table

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Time Table**

1 Select a period→ [Y!] (Menu)→*Edit*→ [■]

Adding a Subject/Classroom/Teacher/Memo

Select an item→ [■] →Enter information→ [■]

Setting the Background/Font Color

Select ***BG Color/Font Color***→ [■] →Select a color→ [■]

2 Press [✉] (OK)

Checking the Time Table

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Time Table**

1 Select a period→ [■]

Tip

- You can switch between the subject window and the subject/classroom window by pressing [✉] (Change) on the Time Table window.

Copying Time Tables

Copy a registered time table and paste it in another time table.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Time Table**

1 **Select a period→[Y!] (Menu)→*Copy*→[■]**

2 **Select the destination period→[■]**

● To copy another period, repeat Step 2.

3 **Press [✉] (OK)**

Tip

● If you want to cancel the time table you have copied, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Undo*** after copying the time table.

Deleting Time Tables

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Time Table**

Deleting One Time Table

Select a period→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***One***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Deleting All Time Tables

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***All***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[■]

Setting Time Table

Setting Starting/Ending Time of a Time Table

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Time Table**

1 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■]→*Set Time*→[■]**

2 **Select a period→[■]→Enter a start time→[■]→Enter an end time→[■]**

● Enter the time in accordance with the 24-hour system.

3 **Press [✉] (OK)**

Tip

● To reset the changed start/end time to the default, press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Settings*** → [■] → ***Reset Time*** → [■] → ***YES*** → [■]

Kitchen Timer

Use Kitchen Timer as a countdown timer.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Kitchen Timer**

1 **Enter countdown time→■**

2 **Press ■ (Start)**

3 **Press ■ (Stop)**

Tip

- The level of the alarm volume is that set for the Sound Vol. setting (page 11-5). If manner mode is set to ***Silent*** or ***Alarms*** (page 11-2), no sound is emitted for the alarm.
- When the manner mode (page 11-2) is set to ***Drive***, the alarm does not play and the handset does not vibrate.
- The alarm rings if you close the handset after starting the kitchen timer.

Voice Recorder

The voice recorder allows you to record sound and save the recording data to Data Folder of the handset or memory card. Although the possible length of recording time depends on the amount of available memory space in Data Folder, the maximum recording time is 90 minutes for each recording.

● Please use the voice recorder exercising common morals and manners.

Recording Sound

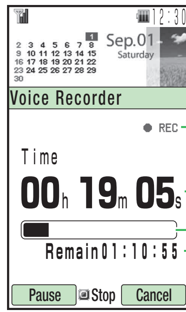
Sounds recorded with the voice recorder are automatically saved in the ***Ring Song・Tone*** folder. You record through a microphone (mouthpiece).

● Please note that recording some concerts and shows aren't allowed even for personal use.

● If the handset receives a call while you are recording, the recording stops and is automatically saved in order to give priority to the call. If you don't want to receive calls while you are recording, set the handset to the offline mode (page 2-12).

Recording Window

The following is displayed on the recording window.



Status

● REC	Recording
■STOP	Stop
❚❚PAUSE	Paused

Record Time
Displays the time recorded.

Progress bar
Displays the position currently being recorded.

Recordable Time
Displays remaining time available for recording.

Recording

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Voice Recorder**

1 **Select *Record*→[■] (twice)**

- Press [✉] (Pause) to pause recording. To resume recording, press [■]. To save the recording data, press [✉] (Save).
- To stop recording, press [■].
- When the remaining time available for recording is less than 10 seconds, " ● REC " flashes.

Changing Destination Folders

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Voice Recorder**

1 **Select *Record*→[■]**

2 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*SelectStorage*→[■]**

3 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[■]**

Playing Recordings

Playback of what you recorded during a call (page 2-6) is possible.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Voice Recorder**

1 **Select *Recordings*→[■]→*Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[■]**

2 **Select a file→[■]**

Number Memo

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **Number Memo**

1 **Select a number memo→[■]**

Tip

- You can make a call by selecting a phone number registered in the Number Memo and pressing [✓].
- Select a phone number registered in the Number Memo and press [Circle Talk key] to display the Circle Talk confirmation window. Then, press and hold [Circle Talk key] to make a Circle Talk call.
- While selecting a number memo, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Video Call (page 5-2)/***Circle Talk*** (page 18-13)/***To Phone Book*** (page 4-3)/***Hide My ID*** (page 11-14)/***Show My ID*** (page 11-14)/***Add to List*** (page 11-14)/***Send Message*** (pages 15-5, 15-10)/***Delete***

World Clock

Time displayed on the time display, event, and alarm is the time in a city you set in Set as Main City (page 13-28). If you set the time for City 1 and City 2, and select ***World-Digital*** or ***World-Analog*** in Idle Screen setting (page 11-7), then the time and date of City 1 and City 2 can be displayed in Standby.

World Clock Setting

Setting City 1/City 2

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings ▶ Clock ▶ World Clock

1 **Select *City 1*/*City 2*→■**

2 **Use ◦ to select a city→■**

Setting the GMT Offset

Select a city by entering a GMT time difference.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings ▶ Clock ▶ World Clock

1 **Select *City 1*/*City 2*→■→Y! (Menu)→*GMT Offset* →■**

2 **Use ◦ to select the time difference→■ (twice)**

Setting Daylight Saving Time (DST)

When the daylight saving time setting is ***ON***, "☀" is displayed on the world clock. If a clock other than Mini Clock is set (page 11-7), then "☀", "☀", or "***DST***" appears in Standby.

Main menu ▶ Settings ▶ Phone Settings ▶ Clock ▶ World Clock

1 **Select *City 1*/*City 2*→■→Y! (Menu)→*DST ON/ OFF*→■**

2 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→■**

Editing City Names

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **World Clock**

1 **Select** ***City 1*/*City 2***→■

2 **Use** ◉ **to select a city**→Y! **(Menu)**→***Rename City*** →■

3 **Enter a city name**→■

Tip

- To reset all city names, select ***City 1*/*City 2*** → ■ → Y! (Menu) → ***Reset Name*** → ■ → ***YES*** → ■
- You can enter up to 13 characters for a city name, regardless of whether they are single-byte or double-byte characters. On some windows, a part of a city name may be omitted.

Switching the Main City

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Phone Settings** ▶ **Clock** ▶ **World Clock**

1 **Select** ***Set as Main City***→■

2 **Select** ***City 1*/*City 2***→■

Displaying World Clock

On the world clock window, you can view dates, time, and time difference by moving a cursor (yellow line) on the map. City 1 and City 2 of the World Clock settings (page 13-27) are displayed in green and red lines respectively.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Useful Tools** ▶ **World Clock**

1 **Use** ◉ **to select a city**

- To switch to Daylight Saving Time (DST), press ✉ (DSTon) or ✉ (DSToff).

Setting the Charging in Progress Display

Select an animation to appear while the handset is charging.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Photo Show**

1 **Select** ***ON/OFF***→■→***ON*/*OFF***→■

2 **Select** ***Settings***→■→***Image***→■

To Specify the Display Method

Select ***Templates*** → ■ → Select a template → ■ (twice)

To Specify the Duration of the Display

Select ***Duration*** → ■ → Input the display time → ■

13 Convenient Functions

3 **Select *Images List*→■→Select an image list→■**

To Create an Animation and Configure Its Settings

● Data Folder images must be added to an image list in advance. Up to five frames can be added for each image list.

Press ✉ (Edit)→Select an image list item→■→***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→■→Select an image→■ (twice)→✉ (Set)

To Display the Images in the Selected Folder as an Animation

Select ***Select Folder*** → ■ → Select a folder → ■

To Specify the Image Preinstalled in the Handset

Select ***Preset*** → ■

Backup

Back up Phone Book entries, events and other information to a memory card.

Transferring Files to a Memory Card

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 **Select *Transfer All*→■→*Backup*→■**

2 **Select data→■**

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press Y! (Menu)→***Mark All***/***Unmark All***→■

3 **Press ✉ (Trans.)→○→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

● When transferring Phone Book entries, a confirmation window appears asking if you want to include images saved to Phone Book. Select ***NO*** to send the Phone Book entries without images.

● When transferring calendar/tasks, a message asks if you wish to backup past events. Select ***Futures Only*** to send events without including previous events.

Note

- Some data cannot be transferred to the memory card.
- Do not use a PC or other device to view or change a backup file in a memory card. The file may be damaged.
- Copyrighted data may not be transferred to the memory card or deleted from the handset after the transfer.
- The security settings on the handset may not be reflected in the transferred data.
- Files in the ***TV*** folder (page 9-3) cannot be transferred to the memory card.

Tip

- Offline mode is set during backing up to the memory card. When the backing up of data is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- The name of transferred files are 2-digit year, month, and day and serial numbers.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

Tip

- Since only a single content key backup file can be saved to a memory card, backing up another content key will overwrite the previously saved backup file. If you want to maintain the previously backed up content key, import the backup file from the memory card to the handset and then perform the backup operation again.
- The file whose content key has been moved to the memory card for backup will no longer be available on the handset.
- Importing a content key into the handset adds it to other content keys in the handset. It does not overwrite the current handset content keys.

Restoring

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 Select *Transfer All*→ [■] →*Restore A*/*Restore B*→ [■]

- If ***There are no data***. is displayed, select either ***Restore A*** or ***Restore B*** to restore the data.

2 Select data→ [■]

- To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Mark All*/*Unmark All***→ [■]

3 Press [✉] (Read)→ [■] →Enter your security code (page 1-25)

Restoring Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad

Select ***Add*/*Overwrite***→ [■] (twice)→Select data→ [■]

- If you select ***Add***, you can add data without deleting data stored on the handset.

Note

- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset may not be reflected in the transferred data.
- Files in the ***TV*** folder (page 9-3) cannot be transferred to the handset.

Tip

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Depending on the amount of entries, it may take some time to restore Phone Book from the memory card.
- When you transfer bookmarks, those for both Yahoo! Keitai and PC websites are transferred.

Restoring Data on the SoftBank Handset (except 3G)

Transfer data on the SoftBank handset (except 3G) that is stored in the memory card to the handset.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 **Select *Transfer All*→■→*From non-3G*→■**

2 **Select data→■**

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Mark All/Unmark All***→■

3 **Press ✉ (Read)→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

Note

- Some data created on the SoftBank handset (PDC) may not be restored to the handset.
- Copyrighted data may not be restored to the handset or may be deleted from the memory card after the transfer.
- If the name of data restored in the handset is more than 32 characters, the characters that exceed the limit are omitted when the file is transferred.
- The security settings on the data restored to the handset may not be reflected in the transferred data.

Tip

- Offline mode is set while transferring data from a memory card. When data transfer is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- Transferred data is saved in the corresponding data folders on your handset respectively.

Deleting Backup Data

Data in the memory card transferred from the handset can be deleted collectively or individually.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 **Select *Transfer All*→■→*Delete Data*→■**

Deleting All Data

Select ***All***→■→***YES***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 **Select *Select Data*→■→Select data→■**

Deleting Phone Book/Events/Tasks/Messages/Bookmarks/Notepad

Select data→■

● To select other data, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Data

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Mark All/Unmark All***→■

3 **Press ✉ (Delete)→*YES*→■**

Backing Up Function Settings

Back up settings to a memory card and use it when restoring handset settings.

Transferring to Memory Card

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 **Select** ***Relocate*** **→ [■] → Enter your security code (page 1-25) →** ***Backup*** **→ [■]**

2 **Select an item → [■]**

- To select another item, repeat Step 2.

Marking/Unmarking All Items

Press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Mark All/Unmark All*** → [■]

3 **Press [✉] (Trans.) → [□] → [■] → Enter a File Code → Re-enter the code → [□] (twice) → [■]**

- A File Code is required for each backup file. The code is required when restoring settings to the handset.

Note

- Do not forget File Code and do not reveal it to others. If necessary, write down code.

Tip

- Handset switches to offline mode during backup. Once backup is completed, offline mode is canceled.

Restoring Settings

Setting data of the handset or another SoftBank handset stored in the memory card can be restored to the handset.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Backup**

1 **Select** ***Relocate*** **→ [■] → Enter your security code (page 1-25) →** ***Restore/From non-3G*** **→ [■]**

2 **Select setting data → [■] → Enter the security code for backups → [□] (twice) → [■]**

Setting data is restored, and the handset automatically restarts.

Tip

- Offline mode is set while restoring data from a memory card. When restoration is complete, offline mode is canceled.
- After selecting setting data, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Delete/Details***

Making International Calls

When making an international call, simply add the international code and then select a country code from a list after entering the other party's phone number. Also change the international code and add entries to the country code list.

● A separate application is required for using the international call service. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Changing the International Code

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Intl. Calls**

1 Select *Intl. Code*→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

The default international code appears.

2 Enter the new code→[■]

Adding Country Codes

The country code list already includes the country codes of 17 countries. You can also edit and add entries. The list can contain up to 20 entries.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Intl. Calls**

1 Select *CountryNumber*→[■]

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add*→[■]

3 Enter a country name→[■]

4 Enter a country code→[■]

The country code is added.

Tip

- After selecting a country name in the country code list, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Edit*/*Delete*
  * Only the entries for the three additional country codes can be deleted.

Shortcut Menu

If you assign frequently used functions to the Shortcut menu, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Setting the Shortcut Menu

Up to 40 items of the handset's functions can be registered. Names and icons of the registered functions can be changed.

1 Access a function you want to assign→[key]

2 Press [key] (Assign)

Tip

- The following functions are assigned as defaults.
  - Create Message
  - Message Box
  - Main Menu
  - Media Player
  - Calendar
  - Time Table
  - JPN Dictionary
  - ENG-JPN Dictionary
  - JPN-ENG Dictionary
  - Calculator
  - IC Card Lock

Accessing a Function from the Shortcut Menu

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select a function→[key]

Note

- Up to two functions can be called up from the shortcut menu.

Tip

- If there is information you haven't viewed, the indicator appears on Information Prompt (page 1-11), and you can view the information.
- If you call up a file registered in the shortcut menu, certain operations may not be available.

Editing the Function Names

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select a function→[key] (Menu)→*Edit Title*→[key]

3 Enter a title→[key]

Tip

- The names of preset functions (left) cannot be changed.

Changing Icons

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select a function→[key] (Menu)→*Change Icon*→[key]

Setting an Icon Preinstalled in Your Handset

Select ***Preset Icons***→[key]→Select an icon→[key]

Setting an Image Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card

Select ***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[key]→Select an image→[key]→Use [key] to adjust the position of the image to clip→[key] (Cut)→[key]

Tip

- The icons of preset functions (page 13-34) cannot be changed.

Moving Icons

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select a function→[Y!] (Menu)→*Arrange Icons*→[●]

3 Select a destination→[●]

Deleting Functions from the Shortcut Menu

1 In Standby, press [key]

2 Select a function→[Y!] (Menu)

Deleting One Function

Select ***Delete***→[●]→***YES***→[●]

Deleting All Functions

Select ***Delete All***→[●]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[●]

Tip

- The preset functions (page 13-34) cannot be deleted from the shortcut menu.

Idokoro Mail

Inform of your arrival or departure by mail notification when you arrive or leave a specified area (Arrival/Departure Mail), and send your location information by a simple operation (Simple Notice).

Note

- The Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice cannot be created if there is not enough memory. Delete sent messages or unnecessary messages in the ***Unsent*** message box (page 15-19) or change the Auto-delete setting (page 15-15) to ***Set***.
- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, the handset position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- Positioning cannot be performed when the positioning function is locked (page 19-5).
- Communication fees are charged for sending the Arrival/Departure Mail and Simple Notice, and for the positioning service.

Tip

- The Idokoro Mail function identifies the handset location using GPS and sends the location information as a mail attachment to the specified people.

Saving People to the Recipients List

Save the people you want to notify about your location to the notification list. You can save up to five people to the list.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Idokoro Mail

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*Recipients List*→■

2 Select an empty field on the Recipients List→■→*Recipient*→■→Select a person from Phone Book→■→Select a phone number or email address→■

3 Select various notification mails (page 13-37)→■→*Yes*/*No*→■

4 Press ✉ (OK)

Tip

- Press Y! (Menu) while the Recipients List is displayed to perform the following:
  Delete*/*Delete All
- The phone number or email address saved to the Recipients List is retained even if the relevant Phone Book entry is deleted.

Saving Areas to the Areas List

When the handset leaves or arrives at a specified area, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to people who have been set as ***Yes*** for departure or arrival notification on the Recipients List. You can save up to seven areas to the Areas List.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Useful Tools ▶ Idokoro Mail

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*Areas List*→■

2 Select an empty field on the Areas List→■→*Area Name*→■→Enter the area name→■

3 Select *Set Location*→■→Set the location information

To Set Your Current Position

Select ***Current***→■→Start positioning

To Select from the Location Logs

Select ***Location Logs***→■→Select location information→■

To Select from Location Memos

Select ***My Locations***→■→Select location information→■

To Select from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select a Phone Book entry that has location information→■

4 **Select *Launch Setting*→ ■ →Set a time range in which Arrival Mail or Departure Mail will be sent**

To Specify the Date

Select ***Select Date***→ ■ →***Date***→ ■ →Enter a date→ ■ → ***Arrivals Time/Departures Time***→ ■ →***ON***→ ■ →Enter the start time and duration→ ■ →✉(OK)

To Specify the Day

Select ***Weekly***→ ■ →***Arrive/Depart*** for the day you want to specify → ■ →***ON***→ ■ →Enter the start time and duration→ ■ → ✉(OK)

5 **Press ✉ (OK)**

Tip

- You can enable or disable an Areas List entry by pressing ✉ (ON/OFF) while the entry is selected on the Areas List.
- Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.
- Press Y! (Menu) while an Areas List entry is selected to perform the following:
  Delete/Delete All
- Press Y! (Menu) while creating the Areas List to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected item):
  Reset/Show Details

Sending Notification Mail

Arrival Mail or Departure Mail is sent when the handset arrives in or leaves from a specified area. Simple Notice allows you to easily notify people of your location.

Leaving or Arriving in the Specified Area

When the handset leaves or arrives at the specified area during the specified time, Departure Mail or Arrival Mail is sent to the people who have been set as ***Yes*** for sending Departure Mail or Arrival Mail on the Recipients List (page 13-36).

Sending Simple Notice of Your Location

You can easily notify of your location by sending Simple Notice to the people who have been set as ***Yes*** on the Recipients List (page 13-36).

1 **In Standby, press and hold** [side key]

Positioning starts and notification of your location is sent automatically.

Tip

- Sent Arrival Mail, Departure Mail and Simple Notice messages are stored in the ***Idokoro*** folder in the ***Sent*** message box. If a Phone Book entry on the Recipients List is deleted, messages are stored in the ***General*** folder in the ***Sent*** message box.
- You cannot send Simple Notice if the Side Key setting (page 11-12) is set to anything other than ***SimpleNotice***.

Sending Touch Tones

Send touch tones to use interactive voice response services and other types of touchtone services.

Sending Individual Touch Tones

1 Press any of the [0] to [9], [*] and [#] keys during a call

Sending Touch Tones Sequentially

Phone Book is useful for storing sequences of touch tones (page 4-3) for remotely operating your home answering machine and other devices.

1 After the handset is connected, press [Y!] (Menu)

2 Select *Phone Book*→[●]→Select a Phone Book entry→[●]

3 Select the phone number containing the touch tones→[Y!] (Menu)

4 Select *Send Tone*→[●]

● You can send up to 32 touch tones at one time.

Using Pause (P) in Touch Tone Sequences

The pause "P" allows you to send sequences of touch tones, each separated with a pause "P". It is convenient if you register multiple touch tones such as remote operation numbers of your home phone.

Saving Touch Tones to Phone Book

Example: Save the following three numbers.

Phone number: ***03-123X-XXX3***

Answering machine code: ***#7777***

Answering machine playback code: ***#1***

1 Enter *03123XXXX3P#7777P#1* in Phone Number field

● For details on saving to Phone Book, see page 4-3.

Sending Touch Tones

1 Open a Phone Book entry containing the touch tones

● For details on how to access a Phone Book entry, see page 4-8.

2 Press [✆]

A call is made to the phone number before the first "P".

3 Press [●]

The sequence of touch tones before the next "P" is sent.

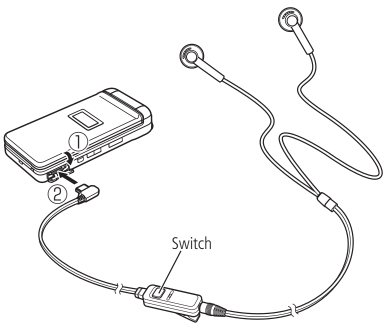
● Repeat Step 3 until all the touch tones have been sent.

Using the Earphone-Microphone

When the Earphone-Microphone is connected, just pressing the microphone switch answers incoming calls or dials a preset phone number. You can also answer incoming calls without pressing any keys by setting Auto Answer.

1 Open the earphone microphone jack cover (①)

2 Insert the plug of Earphone-Microphone into the earphone microphone jack (②)



Note

- When plugging and unplugging the connection plug to the earphone microphone jack, keep the plug level with the jack.
- Do not insert an earphone-microphone if the plug does not match the jack.

Note

- Do not wrap the Earphone-Microphone around the handset. Bringing the Earphone-Microphone close to the internal antenna may cause noise.
- Stereo Earphone-Microphone (optional) TSLAU1 should be used. Other earphone-microphones available on the market cannot be plugged into the jack or may not be compatible with the handset.

Setting the Phone Number

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Earphone** ▶ **Earphone Call**

1 Select *ON/OFF*→■→ *ON* →■

2 Select *Set Number*→■

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select an entry→■→Select a phone number→■ (twice)

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Phone Number***→■→Enter a phone number→■ (twice)

One-touch Calls

1 In Standby, press and hold the microphone switch

- Press and hold the switch again to cancel dialing.

2 **Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call**

- Alternatively, press [POWER] to end the call.

One-touch Answering

1 **When a call is received, press and hold the microphone switch**

2 **Press and hold the microphone switch to end the call**

- Alternatively, press [POWER] to end the call.

Tip

- When the Earphone-Microphone is plugged in while the handset is in manner mode (page 11-2), a ringtone set in the normal mode sounds through the earphone.

Setting Auto Answer

Set to answer a call without pressing the switch when the Earphone-Microphone is connected. Also change the length of time before a call is answered.

- Regardless of the manner mode setting (page 11-2), a beep sound is produced from the earphones and a voice call connection is established automatically.

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Earphone**

1 **Select** ***Auto Answer***→[■]→***ON/OFF***→[■]→***ON***→[■]

2 **Select** ***Set Duration***→[■]→**Enter the answer time** →[■]

Note

- If you set Auto Answer and the Answering Machine (page 13-8), Answering Machine is given priority.
- If you set Auto Answer and Voice Mail (page 14-5), the one with shorter answering time is given priority. If the answering time is the same, Voice Mail is given priority.

14 Optional Services

Optional Services

- For details on services, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- If you are out of the service area, you cannot operate the service from the handset.
- You must apply separately for Call Waiting and Multiparty Call services. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Call Forward	Use this service to forward calls to a preset phone number (page 14-3).
Voice Mail	This service allows a caller to leave a message at the Voice Mail Center when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress (page 14-5). ●**Missed Call Notification** Information Prompt (page 1-11) notifies you of calls that your handset could not receive while outside the service area or handset was powered off.
Call Waiting	This service allows you to place a call on hold to receive another incoming call (page 14-6).
Multiparty Call	Make or receive a call during a call and talk to multiple parties simultaneously (page 14-7).
Call Barring	Stop all outgoing and incoming calls including international calls (page 14-8).
Caller ID	This service allows you to notify your phone number to the other party when you make a call and allows you to confirm the phone number of a caller (page 11-14).

Call Forward

Calls and video calls are transferred to a specified phone if the handset is OFF or is out of the service area. If ***All Calls*** is selected for the transfer conditions, " " (Voice/Video), " " (Voice Call) or " " (Video Call) is displayed in Standby.

Setting/Activating Call Forward

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **VM/Call Fwd**

1 **Select *Call Fwd ON*→[■]→*Voice Call*/*Video Call*/*Voice/Video*→[■]**

● To confirm the current Call Forward setting, select ***Status***.

Diverting All Calls to the Preset Number

The ringtone does not sound before forwarding the call.

Select ***All Calls***→[■]

Diverting Calls You do not Answer within the Set Time

Select ***No Answer***→[■]→Select the answer time→[■]

2 **Set a phone number**

Selecting an Entry from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→[■]→Select an entry→[■]→Select a phone number→[■] (twice)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Phone Number***→[■]→Enter a phone number→[■] (twice)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]

Selecting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select ***Call Log***→[■]→Select a phone number→[■] (twice)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]

Note

- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward while you are using Voice Mail, Voice Mail is deactivated.

Tip

- You cannot set toll free numbers, international numbers or other generally restricted numbers as forwarding numbers.
- When both Call Forward and Answering Machine (page 13-8) are set, the function with the shorter ring time takes priority.
  Example: Call Forward ring time ....10 seconds
  Answering Machine ring time ....9 seconds
  In this case, Answering Machine takes priority, but priority may change depending on signal strength.

Receiving calls after activating Call Forward

- If you press [✓] while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to the caller.
  - If you set ***All Calls***, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to a forwarding number.

Deactivating Call Forward/Voice Mail

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **VM/Call Fwd**

1 Select *DeactivateAll*→[■]

- To confirm the current Call Forward/Voice Mail settings, select ***Status***.

Note

- If you select ***DeactivateAll***, both Call Forward and Voice Mail are deactivated.
- If you are not using ***Call Forward*** or ***Voice Mail*** (page 14-5), use one of the following methods to reject a call.
  - When a voice call is received, press [✉] (Divert).
  - When a video call is received, press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Divert***

14 Optional Services

Voice Mail

Transfer calls to Voice Mail Center (ie: when your handset is out of range or a call is in progress). If you set ***All Calls*** in the forward settings to forward calls to the Voice Mail Center, " " is displayed in Standby. When the Voice Mail Center receives a new message, Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears if the Missed Call Notification function (page 14-6) is set.

" " appears when you have a new message.

● This service is unavailable for video calls.

Activating Voice Mail

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **VM/Call Fwd**

1 Select *Voice Mail ON*→ ■

● To confirm the current Voice Mail setting, select ***Status***.

2 Select *No Answer*→ ■ →Select the answer time → ■

● If you select ***All Calls***, calls are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center without ringing or vibrating the handset.

Note

- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously, but Call Forward for video calls is available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Voice Mail while you are using Call Forward, Call Forward is deactivated.

Receiving calls after activating Voice Mail

● If you press while a ringtone is sounding, you can talk to the caller.

- If you set ***All Calls***, the handset does not receive calls, but they are forwarded to the Voice Mail Center.

Voice Mail

● Access the Personal Options menu from Voice Mail Center to set/customize outgoing message. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Listening to Your Voice Mail

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **VM/Call Fwd**

1 Select *Listen VM*→[■]

Tip

- To access Voice Mail messages while overseas, dial +819066514170 (connection fees apply).

Missed Call Notification

Information Prompt (page 1-11) notifies you about the calls that the handset could not receive because it was out of the service area or the power was off while Voice Mail was set. If Voice Mail Center receives a message while you are on another line, the handset receives a notification.

1 In Standby, enter *1414* and press [✓]

● Follow the voice prompts.

Tip

- You can also set it with the procedures below.
  Main menu → ***Settings*** → ***Call Settings*** → ***Call Services*** → ***Missed Calls*** → [■]
- To set from a fixed-line phone in Japan, dial 0906651414.
- To set from outside Japan, dial +819066514191 (connection fees apply).

Call Waiting

Call Waiting service enables you to answer a newly received voice call while you are talking on another voice call. Also use this service to put your current voice call on hold while you make a voice call to someone else.

● This service is unavailable for video calls.

Setting/Activating Call Waiting

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Call Waiting**

1 Select *ON/OFF*→[■]

After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

● To confirm the current Call Waiting setting, select ***Status***.

Using Call Waiting

1 During a call, the Call Waiting tone is heard

The name and phone number of the caller appear on the display.

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Answer*→[■]

The original caller is placed on hold and a connection is established with the second caller. Both original and second names are displayed.

Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is active, unanswered calls are transferred to Voice Mail Center or the forwarding number. When active service is set to ***All Calls***, Call Waiting is disabled.
- To forward a call received while you are on another line, set ***No Answer*** for the Call Forward.
- When the Call Waiting tone is heard, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Answer/End & Answer/Reject Call/Divert/End All Calls

Switching between Two Callers

1 During Call Waiting, press [2] [📞]

- Press [2] [📞] to switch between callers.

If a caller terminates a call during Call Waiting

- A ringtone sounds and the screen displays ***Holding***. Press [📞] to start talking with a person on hold.

Multiparty Call

Call other parties during a call and switch between the parties or talk to multiple parties simultaneously. Connect with up to five parties simultaneously.

- This service is unavailable for video calls.

Making Calls to Other Parties during a Call

1 During a call, enter a phone number→[📞]

The original party is placed on hold and you can talk to another party.

- You can select a phone number from Phone Book (page 4-8) or call log (page 2-7) after pressing [Y!] (Menu).

Switching between Parties

1 During a call, enter a phone number→[📞]

2 When the other party answers, press [2] [📞]

- Press [2] [📞] to switch between callers.

If a caller terminates a call during a call

- A ringtone sounds and the screen displays ***Holding***. Press [📞] to start talking with a person on hold.

Talking to All Parties

1 **During a call, enter a phone number→[✓]**

2 **When the other party answers, press [Y!] (Menu)**

3 **Select *Multiparty*→[■]→*Multiparty*→[■]**

Pressing [POWER] during a Multiparty call

- End calls with all parties.

Ending a line during a Multiparty call

- Other lines remain connected.

Talking to the selected party only

- Select a party and press [Y!] (Menu)→*Multiparty*→[■]→*Private*. You can talk to the selected party and other parties are placed on hold.

Call Barring

Restrict outgoing and incoming voice calls, video calls and SMS messages.

Activating Call Barring

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Call Barring**

- To confirm the current Call Barring setting, select ***Status***.

Restricting Outgoing Calls

Select ***Outgoing Call***→[■]→Select a barring condition→[■]→Enter your call barring service code (page 1-25)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]

All Outgoings: Stop all outgoing calls.

All Out-Intl.: Stop all outgoing international calls.

Out-Intl.*: Stop all outgoing international calls except to Japan.

* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the service center.

Restricting Incoming Calls

Select ***Incoming Call***→[■]→Select a barring condition→[■]→Enter your call barring service code (page 1-25)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]

All Incomings: Stop all Incoming calls.

All If Roamed*: Stop all Incoming international calls.

* The handset does not support international roaming, but settings are saved to the service center.

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Note

- You can still make emergency calls (110 (police), 119 (fire and ambulance) and 118 (coast guard)) when the call barring service is activated.
- You cannot use ***All Outgoings*** and ***All Incomings*** if you have started using the Call Forward or Voice Mail service. (Call Forward or Voice Mail is given priority.)
- If call barring service code (page 1-25) is incorrectly entered three consecutive times, Call Barring settings are locked. Change call barring service code and center access code (page 1-25). For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Tip

- If a call is made while Call Barring is active, a message informs you that Call Barring is set. The message may not appear immediately, depending on your location. If message does not appear, check your Call Barring settings.

Deactivating Call Barring

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Call Barring**

1 **Select *Cancel All*→[■]→Enter your call barring service code (page 1-25)→Connect to the network automatically→[■]**

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

Changing Your Call Barring Service Code

Main menu ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Call Settings** ▶ **Call Services** ▶ **Call Barring**

1 **Select *Security Code*→[■]**

2 **Enter your current call barring service code**

3 **Enter your new call barring service code→[■]**

4 **Re-enter your new call barring service code for confirmation→[■]**

- After connecting to the network, a setting completed window appears. If the window does not appear, follow the procedure again.

15 Messaging

About Messaging

■S! Mail

Exchange long text messages, pictures, sounds, vObjects, etc. with other SoftBank handsets, PCs and other devices connected to the Internet.

● To use S! Mail and receive email, an additional contract is required.

■SMS

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

Tip

- **Retry Function**
  When the other party's handset is turned off or out of range, the message is stored on the Server Mail Box and will be sent when the signal is available.

Customizing Handset Address

Change the account name (part before @) of your handset address.

(Default)

□□□□□□□□□□□@softbank.ne.jp

(Custom)

Account Name@softbank.ne.jp

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- This operation uses Yahoo! Keitai access.
- Before using Mail, retrieve the network connection information (page 11-16).
- Changing your email address is an effective way of preventing spam.

1 In Standby, press [Y!] → *設定･申込* (Settings/Applications) → [●]

2 Select *各種変更手続き* (Changing Applications) → [●] → *オリジナルメール設定（メール各種設定）* (Original Mail/Mail settings) → [●]

● Follow the onscreen instructions.

Tip

- Alternatively, access Messaging Settings as follows:
  Main menu → ***Messaging*** → ***Settings*** → ***Mail Address***

Incoming Messages

When a message arrives, ringtone sounds and animation plays. ✉ appears at top of Display. When a "Feeling Mail" arrives, graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in Information Prompt (page 1-11). Incoming messages are saved to ***Received.***

Check Information Prompt to confirm any unread messages. When you have unread Feeling Mail, graphics indicating the sender's mood appears in the background. For more than one Feeling Mail, background graphics is based on the most recent message.

- ***Received*** contains General folder, Ku-man folder, Idokoro folder and 17 user folders. Sort messages to folders to organize incoming messages (page 15-15).
- When you receive an S! Mail message, the reception method varies depending on the message size or whether there are any attachments. The reception method is set to ***Immediate*** (page 15-24) at time of purchase so that all the data is downloaded automatically.

1 When Information Prompt appears, select *New Messages*→■

2 Select a folder→■→Select a message→■

Tip

- If you receive a message during a call, an electronic tone will sound.
- If you send a message when delivery check (page 15-23) is set to ***Ask***, you will receive a mail delivery report.

Retrieving Messages from Server

Main menu ▶ Messaging

1 Select *Retrieve New*→■

Insufficient Memory

When Messaging memory is low, the oldest message is automatically deleted to receive an incoming message.

Note

- If Auto-delete (page 15-15) is set to ***Do not Set***, S! Mail notifications are not delivered when memory is low (✉ appears in Standby). Delete unnecessary messages (page 15-19) and obtain Mail List (page 15-20) to retrieve notifications.

Incoming Messages during Handset Use

If Priority (page 11-15) is set to ***Pause***, incoming messages are notified by a confirmation message during handset use. Choose ***Read Now*** or ***Later***.

Checking Received Messages

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box** ▶ **Received**

1 **Select a folder→● →Select a message→●**

Note

- If Retrieve Mode (page 15-24) is set to ***Deferred***, the initial portion of text is delivered as a notification and complete message is stored on the Server Mail Box when:
  - · Text exceeds 284 single-byte characters (284 bytes)
  - · Files are attached
  - · Message is sent to multiple addresses
  - · Subject field contains 41 or more single-byte characters
  - · Sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters
- To manually Retrieve S! Mail:
  Open S! Mail notification, scroll to ***Retrieve Mail*** and press ●.
- If you receive the rest of the message, transmission fees may be charged on the recipient's side. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- It may be impossible to display/play a file until you obtain a content key (content license) depending on the file.
- Messages exceeding 300 KB cannot be retrieved.

Tip

- Alternatively, you can press ✉ in Standby to access the Messaging menu.
- When a new SMS with 161 or more single-byte characters is received, the messages will be combined automatically. While receiving a combined message, the message ***Linking SMS***. is displayed in the Received message in the Message Box.
- You can reply (page 15-16) or forward (page 15-17) messages from received messages.

Forwarding the Continuation of S! Mail

When you receive an S! Mail notification, manually forward the message from the Server Mail Box to your PC or other device.

1 **Open an S! Mail notification→Y! (Menu)→*Divert* →●**

2 **Select *Server Mail*→●**

3 **Select *Keep*/*Do not Keep*→● →Enter an address**

- For details on how to enter address, see page 15-5.

4 **Press ✉ (Divert)**

Creating & Sending an S! Mail

Send a long message with up to 15,000 double-byte characters/30,720 single-byte characters or a message with images and melodies attached.

● You can send an S! Mail message of up to 300 KB including the address, subject, body text and attachment files. The maximum number of characters allowed varies depending on the data size of the attached file.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Create New**

1 Select *Address*→■→Enter an address

● Specify a phone number (up to 24 digits) or an email address (up to 254 characters). Up to 20 addresses are allowed with To, Cc, and Bcc combined.

Selecting an Address from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select an entry→■→Select a phone number/email address→■

Entering a Phone Number/Email Address Directly

Select ***Phone Number/Email***→■→ Enter a phone number/email address→■

Selecting from Simple Input

● You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 15-22) and enter.

Select ***Simple Input***→■→Select an entry→■

Selecting an Address from the Sent/Received Log

Select ***Sent Log/Received Log***→■→Select a log→■

Selecting an Address from a Group

● You can select from addresses that you have saved to Group (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select ***Group***→■→Select a group→■

2 Select *Subject*→■→Enter a subject→■

3 Select *Text*→■→Enter a message→■

Inserting a Phone Number, etc.

Phone numbers, emoticons, and phrases can be inserted from Notepad, Signature, Phone Book, owner information, Sent log, etc. (page 3-14).

4 Attach files

● For details on how to attach files, see page 15-8.

5 Press ✉ (Send)→*OK*→■

The message is sent.

● If you select ***Notify Only Once***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

- When there is insufficient memory, you cannot create a message. Delete unnecessary messages (page 15-19) from ***Message Box*** or set Auto-delete (page 15-15) back to the default ***Set***.
- If the other party's handset doesn't support S! Mail, it might be displayed differently.

Tip

- You can open the Create Message window if you press and hold ✉ in Standby.
- By pressing and holding ◀/▶ in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create a message by selecting a log and pressing ✉ (Mail).

Available Options When You Enter an Address

An address can be added or deleted after you enter it. Also save it to Phone Book, change the address type, or set the category.

1 In the Create Message window, select the address field

Adding Recipients

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Add Address***→[■]→Select an address→[■]→[✉] (OK)

● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Deleting One Recipient

Press [■]→Select a recipient→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***One***→[■]

Deleting All Recipients

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete All***→[■]

Deleting Multiple Recipients

Press [■]→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***Select Multi***→[■]→Select recipients→[■]→[✉] (Delete)→[✉] (OK)

Storing a Recipient's Information in Phone Book

Press [■]→Select a recipient→[Y!] (Menu)→***Save Sender***→[■]→***Add New/Add***→[■]

● See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Press [■]→Select a recipient→[Y!] (Menu)→***To/Cc/Bcc***→[■]→***To/Cc/Bcc***→[■]→[✉] (OK)

To: The recipient's address.

Cc: Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the ***To*** field to other addresses. Addresses entered in the ***Cc*** (carbon copy) field are also displayed to the other recipients.

Bcc: Addresses entered in the ***Bcc*** (blind carbon copy) field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Registering All Addresses into a Group

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***To Group***→[■] (twice)→Select a group→[■]→Enter a group name→[■]

Available Options When You Enter a Text

Text can be edited or deleted after you enter it. Also insert a mail template or save entered text as a template.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text

Editing the Text

Press [■]→Edit the text→[■]

Deleting the Text

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Clear Field***→[■]

Switching the Text to Mail Template

● If you call up a template while creating a message, a confirmation window appears asking you whether you want to delete text and insert the template. The message you have created will be deleted if you select ***YES***.

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Switch Templ.***→[■]→***Switch***→[■]→***Phone Memory/Memory Card***→[■]→Select a template→[■]→Edit the text→[■]

Saving the Entered Text as a Template
Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Save Template***→[■]→Edit a title→[■]→***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→[■]

Creating Arrange Mail

This function allows you to make your message more visually appealing by changing the size and color of text, background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting lines or images into your message. Also decorate the text easily using mail templates for creating messages.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text→[■]→[Y!] (Menu)→*Arrange*→[■]

The Arrange window appears.

2 Decorate the text

Changing Font Color/Font Size
Select ***Font Color***/***Font Size***→[■]→Select a color/size→[■]→Enter a message

Blinking/Scrolling/Swinging a Text
Select ***Blink***/***Telop***/***Swing***→[■]→Enter a message

Aligning a Text
Select ***LineUp***→[■]→Select the position of the entered text→[■]→Enter a message

Inserting a Line
Select ***Partition***→[■]

Inserting an Image/Sound/My Pictograms item
Select ***Picture***/***Sound***/***MyPictograms***→[■]→Select an image/sound/My Pictograms item→[■]

Select the Background Color
Select ***ScreenColor***→[■]→Select a color→[■]

Deleting Decorations Individually
Select ***Cancel***→[■]→***Delete by Each***→[■]→Select a decoration→[■]→[✉] (Delete)

Deleting All Decorations
Select ***Cancel***→[■]→***Delete All***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Tip

- When you decorate message text, the " [HTML] " indicator appears on the display. If you press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Preview***, the text preview will be displayed.
- If you send a decorated message to a device (PC, for example) other than an HTML-enabled SoftBank handset, decorated parts may not be displayed properly.
- Animation files preinstalled in ***Pictures*** folder of Data Folder can be inserted when you select ***Picture***. For the items which can be inserted, see Arrange-picture List (page 22-16).

Changing the Decorations

By selecting a range of entered text, decorations such as color, size, flashing, telop, swing, and alignments can be set. Also change/reset the decorations.

1 In the Create Message window, select the text→[■]→Enter a message

2 Press [✉] (Range•paste)→*Start*→[■]→Move the cursor to the last character of the text range→[■]→*Arrange*→[■]

3 Decorate the selected text

Deleting the Decorations of the Selected Text
Select ***Cancel***→[■]→Select a decoration→[■]→[✉] (Delete)

Using Mail Template

Decorate the text easily by inserting the mail template.

1 **In the Create Message window, select the text→ ■ → Y! (Menu)→*Templates*→ ■ →*Phone Memory*/ *Memory Card*→ ■**

2 **Select a mail template→ ■ →Edit the text→ ■**

Tip

- When there is already text entered in the message, a confirmation window appears asking whether to insert the template and delete the entered text.

Attaching Files

Attach an image or melody to an S! Mail.

1 **In the Create Message window, select *Files*→ ■**

Attaching a File Saved to Data Folder/Memory Card

Select ***Data Folder***→ ■ →***Phone Memory***/***Memory Card***→ ■ →Select a file→ ■

Taking a Picture to Attach

Select ***Take Picture***→ ■ →Take a picture→ ■

Recording a Video to Attach

Select ***Record Video***→ ■ →Record a video→ ■ (twice)

Setting Auto Playback for an Attached File

● Only one attached file can be set for Auto Playback.

Select an attached file→ Y! (Menu)→***Auto Play***→ ■ →***ON***/***OFF***→ ■ →***ON***/***OFF***→ ■ →***Display***/***Do not Display***→ ■ →Enter message to be displayed when the file is played→ ■

Note

- Some files may not be attached to a message depending on the type. To find out whether a certain file can be attached or not, see Details of the file (page 9-10).

Tip

- When selecting the file in a folder, select a folder and press ■.
- You may not be able to set Auto Playback for some files.
- Auto Playback setting will be canceled automatically if you enter an email address for the recipient, or if you decorate the text using Arrange.
- While selecting the attached file, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:

  Delete/***Auto Play***/***Details***

Feeling Setting

A Feeling setting is a feature which can notify the recipient a new message with the emoticon.

1 **In the Create Message window, select *Feeling*→ ■ →Select the Feeling icon→ ■**

Note

- When you send a message with an emoticon to a handset that doesn't support the Feeling setting, the emoticon is displayed as a regular pictograph on the subject field.

Other Functions

1 Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to SMS

Select ***Type***→■→***SMS***→■

- If a message contains something that cannot be sent using SMS, a confirmation window will appear. The contents which cannot be sent will be deleted if you select ***Change***.
- If a message exceeds the maximum number of characters allowed in SMS, a confirmation window will appear. If you select ***Cut to Fit SMS***, the maximum amount of text from the beginning is remained and the excess is deleted.

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***To Drafts***→■→***Save***→■

Checking the Content Before Sending a Message

Press [☆/文字] or [Y!] (Menu)→***Preview***→■

Checking Delivery Status of Sent Message

Select ***Options***→■→***DeliveryCheck***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select ***Options***→■→***Delivery Time***→■→Select the delivery time→■

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select ***Options***→■→***Expiry***→■→Select the expiry time→■

Setting the Message Priority Level

Select ***Options***→■→***Priority***→■→Select the priority→■

Setting/Canceling Your Reply to Address

- For details on setting Replay to address, see page 15-23.

Select ***Options***→■→***Reply to***→■→***Activate/Deactivate***→■

Deleting Checked Received Messages on the Sender's Side Automatically

Select ***Options***→■→***Self-delete***→■→***ON***→■

Note

- If you change the message type from S! Mail to SMS, the following items are deleted.
  Email address/Cc and Bcc setting/Subject/Attached file/Mail template and Arrange settings/Feeling setting

Tip

- If you haven't set the date or time on ***Delivery Time***, messages are sent out immediately.
- S! Mail messages saved on the Server Mail Box are deleted automatically when the specified expiry time is reached.

Creating & Sending an SMS Message

The Short Message Service (SMS) allows you to exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets. Up to 70 characters (140 bytes) can be sent if they include double-byte and single-byte katakana or pictographs. If all the characters are single-byte alphanumerics or single-byte symbols, up to 160 characters can be sent.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Create New**

1 Select *Text*→■→Enter a message→■

2 Select *Address*→■→Enter a phone number

Selecting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select an entry→■→Select a phone number→■

Entering a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Phone Number***→■→Enter a phone number→■

Selecting from Simple Input

- You can select from addresses that you have saved to Simple Input (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select ***Simple Input***→■→Select an entry→■

Selecting a Phone Number from the Sent Log/Received Log

Select ***Sent Log/Received Log***→■→Select a log→■

Selecting Phone Numbers from a Group

- You can select from addresses that you have saved to a Group (page 15-22) and enter them.

Select ***Group***→■→Select a group→■

3 Press ✉ (Send)→*OK*→■

The message is sent.

- If you select ***Notify Only Once***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

- When you send a message, transmission fees will be charged for every recipient entered in the address field.

Tip

- After Step 2, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following: ***Preview/To Drafts/Add Address/Delete All/Save Sender/ To Group***
- By pressing and holding ◂○/○▸ in Standby, you can view Sent log/ Received log. You can also create SMS by selecting a log and pressing ✉ (Mail).

Other Functions

When you send an SMS message, the following options are available. The options can be configured in advance (page 15-23).

1 Open the Create Message window

Switching the Mail Type to S! Mail

Select ***Type***→[■]→***S! Mail***→[■]

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select ***Options***→[■]→***Expiry***→[■]→Select the expiry time→[■]

Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipient

Select ***Options***→[■]→***DeliveryCheck***→[■]→***ON/OFF***→[■]

Note

- By performing the following operations, you can also change the mail type from SMS to S! Mail automatically. If these items are deleted, the message type will be reset to SMS automatically.
  Add email address/Set Cc/Bcc setting/Enter Subject/Attach file/Set Feeling setting
- By pressing [Y!] (Menu) and selecting ***Templates*** or ***Arrange*** while entering text, a confirmation window will appear asking you whether you want to switch from SMS to S! Mail. If you want to switch to S! Mail, select ***Change to S!Mail***. If you want to create a message as an SMS message, select ***Cut to Fit SMS***. If you select ***Edit Message***, you can go back to editing the message.

Tip

- Saved SMS messages are deleted when the specified expiry time is reached.

Drafts

Saving the Message as a Draft Message to Drafts

Main menu ▶ [Messaging] ▶ [Create New]

1 Select an item→[■]→Enter/edit the selected item →[■]

2 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*To Drafts*→[■]→*Save*→[■]

Editing/Sending Draft Messages

Main menu ▶ [Messaging] ▶ [Drafts]

1 Select a message→[■]→Select an item→[■]

2 Edit the selected item→[■]

- Press [✉] (OK) after editing a recipient.

3 Press [✉] (Send)→*OK*→[■]

Tip

- While selecting a message in the Drafts message list, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following:
  Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender/Export/Sort by/Filter

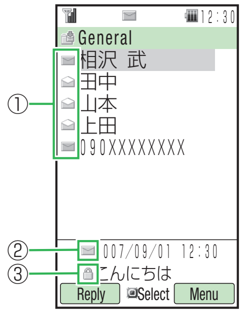
Message Box

Received and sent messages are saved to the ***Received*** and ***Sent*** message boxes respectively. Created messages that have not been sent are saved to the ***Drafts*** message box, and messages that have failed to be sent are saved to the ***Unsent*** message box.

- For details on an available amount of messages you can store, see "Storage Capacity" on page 22-17.
- When there are unread messages in ***Received***, the "" indicator appears.

Checking Messages in the Message Box

Message List Window



Received Message List

①Message Status

Unread Message with Attachment(s)
Unread Message without Attachments
Read Message with Attachment(s)
Read Message without Attachments
Unread S! Mail Notification
Read S! Mail Notification
Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
Sent Message with Attachment(s)/No Delivery Confirmation
Sent Message without Attachments/No Delivery Confirmation
Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)
Partly Sent Message without Attachments
Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Read Delivery Report
Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Read Delivery Report
Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Unread Delivery Report
Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Unread Delivery Report
Partly Sent Message with Attachment(s)/Confirming Delivery
Partly Sent Message without Attachments/Confirming Delivery
Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Delivery Failed
Unsent Message without Attachments/Delivery Failed
Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Waiting Delivery
Unsent Message without Attachments/Waiting Delivery
Unsent Message with Attachment(s)/Sending
Unsent Message without Attachments/Sending
Draft with Attachment(s)
Draft without Attachments

②S! Mail/SMS

S! Mail
SMS
SMS on the USIM card

③Priority/Protection
- High/Protected
- Normal/Protected
- Low/Protected
- High/Not Protected
- Low/Not Protected

Setting Security for Message Box

When Security Lock is set for Message Box, Security Code (page 1-25) entry is required to open Message Box.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging**

1 **Select** ***Message Box*** → (Menu) → ***Security Lock*** → ■

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select** ***Lock/Unlock*** → ■

Checking the Contents of the Message

Main menu ▶ **Messaging**

1 **Select** ***Message Box*** → ■

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select a folder** → ■ → **Select a message** → ■

Changing the Message Box List Display Mode

Switching between Folder View and All Message View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between Folder View and All Message View.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Press** (Menu) → ***Display*** → ■

2 **Select** ***Folder View*** → ■ → ***Folder View/All Messages*** → ■

Switching between Mixed View and Separate View

Switch views of received and sent messages in the Message Box between "Sent or Received" and "Sent and Received".

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Press** (Menu) → ***Display*** → ■

2 **Select** ***Received/Sent*** → ■ → ***Mixed View/Separate View*** → ■

Tip

- You can also switch the Mixed View/Separate View by pressing (Mixed)/ (Each) in the Message Box.

Switching the Message List Display Mode

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Select a folder→■**

2 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Display*→■**

3 **Select *Display Items*→■→*Subject/Addresses*→■**

Tip

- You can also switch the message list display mode by pressing ☐.

Splitting the Message List Window

Split the message list window into upper and lower sections in order to view the subject/address and part of body text of the currently selected message.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Select a folder→■**

2 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Display*→■→*Change View* →■**

To Display a Preview (Top part) of Body Text (with Arrange Setting)

Select ***Preview***→■

To Display a Preview (Top Part) of Body Text (Text Only)

Select ***Text Only***→■

- When ***Subject*** is selected for Subject/Addresses (left), the preview window will show the other party's address. When ***Addresses*** is selected for Subject/Addresses, the subject will be displayed.
- If you do not want to split the message list window, select ***List Only***.

Setting Mini Tool in the Message List Window

If you set Wide View to ***Wide View OFF***, you can display Mini Tool (page 1-23) in the Message Box, Drafts and Unsent message list windows.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging**

1 **Select *Message Box/Drafts/Unsent*→■**

2 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Display*→■→*Wide View ON/ Wide View OFF*→■**

Tip

- You can also set the Wide View from the Main menu (page 1-23).

Operations While Viewing Messages

Copying Text

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box

1 Select a folder→■→Open a message

2 Press ✉ (Menu)→*Text Copy*→■

3 Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→■→Specify a range of text to copy →■

Moving SMS Messages to Your USIM Card or Handset

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box

1 Select a folder→■→Open a message

2 Press ✉ (Menu)→*Move*→■→*To Folder/To USIM* →■

Displaying Details of a Message

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box

1 Select a folder→■→Open a message

2 Press ✉ (Menu)→*View*→■→*View Details*→■

Managing Message Folders

Use folders to organize and manage messages saved in Message Box.

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box

Editing a Folder Name

Select a folder→✉ (Menu)→***Rename Folder***→■→Enter a folder name→■

Sorting Messages to the Specified Folders Automatically

Select the user folder, Ku-man folder or Idokoro folder→✉ (Menu)→***Sort Setting***→■→Select the sort criteria→■→Specify condition →■

- Select ***Person*** to set an individual entry in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select ***Group*** to set a group in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select ***Address*** to set the specified addresses that are not saved to Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select ***Phone Book*** to set existence or non-existence in Phone Book as the sort condition.
- Select ***Ku-man*** to set messages from Ku-man as the sort condition.
- Select ***Idokoro*** to set Departure Mail, Arrival Mail, and Simple Notice as the sort condition.

Auto-delete

Select a folder→✉ (Menu)→***Auto-delete***→■→***Received/Sent***→■→***Set/Do not Set***→■

Setting Security for the Selected Folder

- You can set the handset so that it asks for the security code in order to view the messages in the selected folder. However, folder security cannot be set to ***General***.

Select a folder→[Y!] (Menu)→***Security Lock***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***Lock/Unlock***→[■]

Note

- When Auto-delete is set to ***Do not Set*** and memory becomes full, you cannot send/receive a message. Delete unnecessary messages (page 15-19).
- When Auto-delete is set to ***Set*** and memory becomes full, the oldest message is deleted when a new message is received or created. However, protected messages (page 15-19) will not be deleted.

Tip

- If received messages meet more than one sorting criterion, the order of priority for sorting messages is as follows.
  - If the sender or recipient is saved in Phone Book: ***Idokoro→Person→Group→Phone Book (Known)***
  - If the sender or recipient is not saved in Phone Book: ***Address→Phone Book (Unknown)***
- To change the sorting criterion of a folder and re-sort, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Sort***.

Replying to Messages

- When replying to an S! Mail, ***Re:*** is automatically inserted in the subject field.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box** ▶ **Received**

1 Select a folder→[■]→Open a message→[✉] (Reply)

Replying by Creating a New Message

Select ***Blank***→[■]

Replying by Quoting the Received Message

Select ***With Text***→[■]

Replying by Referring the Received Message

Select ***Refer***→[■]

- To reply to the sender of a message with multiple addresses, select ***To Sender*** or ***To All.***

Tip

- When you quote a received message decorated by Arrange settings and reply to the sender, an outgoing message that quotes the decorations is created.
- When you quote the text of a received message to compose a new message, the quoted text is not displayed if you decorate the message by Arrange settings.
- If incoming message is set to Self-delete, you cannot quote the message.

Forwarding Messages

- For S! Mail, a forwarding message has ***Fw:*** automatically inserted into the front of the subject.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box** ▶ **Received**

1 **Select a folder→■→Open a message→Y! (Menu)**

2 **Select *Divert*→■**

Tip

- When you forward a message with an attached file, the attached file is forwarded, too.
- When you forward a decorated message, the decorations will be forwarded, too.

Making a Call to the Sender of the Message

The call can be made when the sender's address is a phone number.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box** ▶ **Received**

1 **Select a folder→■→Open a message→Y! (Menu)**

2 **Select *Call Sender*→■→✆**

Checking Delivery Report

Confirm the delivery status of messages by delivery report sent from the Server Mail Box when Delivery Check (page 15-23) is set to ***Ask***. View the delivery report from Information Prompt (page 1-11), too.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Select *Sent*→Select a folder→■**

2 **Select a message with the delivery confirmation icon ( )→■**

Linked Information

Make a call, send a message, or connect to a website from a linked phone number, email address, or URL within a received message.

- The available linked information is displayed in blue characters.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Select a folder→■→Select message including information**

2 **Select the information→■**

Making a Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select ***Voice Call***→■→✆

Making a Video Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select ***Voice Call***→■→Y! (Menu)→***Video Call***→■

Making a Circle Talk Call to the Selected Phone Number

Select ***Voice Call***→■→Y! (Menu)→***Circle Talk***→■→✉ (CT)

Sending a Message to the Selected Phone Number/Email Address

Select ***Create Mail***→[■]→***Create***→[■]→Create a message

Adding the Selected Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select ***Save Sender***→[■]→***Add New/Add***→[■]→Add a Phone Book entry

● See "Adding a New Entry" (page 4-3) about the following operations.

Starting the Navi Application from Location Information

Select ***Navi Appli***→[■]→***Launch***→[■]

Registering Selected Location Information to the My Locations

Select ***To Locations***→[■]

Connecting to the Selected URL

Select ***Connect***→[■]

Saving Attached Files

Save a file attached to received message in Data Folder.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box** ▶ **Received**

1 **Select a folder→[■]→Open a message that has an attached file**

2 **Select an attached file→[■]→*Save*→[■]**

● To display/play the attached file, select ***View*** or ***Play***.

3 **Enter a file name→[■]→*Phone Memory/Memory Card*→[■]**

Note

- Some files may not be saved depending on the file type.
- Some data may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.
- When a received message has more than 20 attached files, all the files after the 20th file are not displayed/played.

Editing/Sending the Unsent Messages

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Unsent**

1 **Select a message→[■]→Select an item→[■]**

2 **Edit the item→[■]**

● Press [✉] (OK) after editing a recipient.

3 **Press [✉] (Send)→*OK*→[■]**

Tip

- The only type of message that you can edit is a message that you have failed to send.
- From the Unsent folder, press [Y!] (Menu) to perform the following: ***Delete/Send Multi/Display/Call Address/Save Sender***

Protecting/Unprotecting Messages

Protect messages against accidental deletion or Auto-delete (page 15-15).

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

1 **Select *Received/Sent*→Select a folder→■**

Protecting/Unprotecting One Message

Select a message→✉ (Menu)→***Protect***→■→***One***→■→***Protect/Deactivate***→■

Protecting/Unprotecting Multiple Messages

Press ✉ (Menu)→***Protect***→■→***Select Multi***→■→***Protect/Deactivate***→■→Select messages→■→✉ (OK)

Protecting/Unprotecting All Messages in the Folder

Press ✉ (Menu)→***Protect***→■→***All***→■→***Protect/Deactivate***→■ (twice)

Deleting Messages

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

Deleting One Message

Select a folder→■→Select a message→✉ (Menu)→***Delete***→■→***One***→■→***YES***→■

Deleting Multiple Messages

Select a folder→■→✉ (Menu)→***Delete***→■→***Select Multi***→■→Select messages→■→✉ (Delete)→***YES***→■

Deleting All Messages in a Folder

Select a folder→✉ (Menu)→***Delete***→■→***All in Folder***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Deleting All Messages in the Received/Sent Message Box

Press ✉ (Menu)→***Delete***→■→***All***→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→■

Received/Sent Message Operations

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Message Box**

Changing the Order that Messages Appear

Select a folder→■→✉ (Menu)→***Sort by***→■→Select the sort criteria→■

Displaying Messages According to the Specified Criteria

Select a folder→■→✉ (Menu)→***Filter***→■→Select the criteria→■

Making a Call to the Sender/Receiver of a Message

Select a folder→■→Select a message→✉ (Menu)→***Call Sender/Call Address***→■→✆

Adding a New Phone Number/Email Address to Phone Book

Select a folder→■→Select a message→✉ (Menu)→***Save Sender***→■→***Add New***→■→Enter items→✉ (OK)

Adding a Phone Number/Email Address to a Phone Book Entry

Select a folder→■→Select a message→✉ (Menu)→***Save Sender***→■→***Add***→■→Select a Phone Book entry→■→✉ (OK)

Switching between Unread and Read

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box ▶ Received

1 **Select a folder→■**

Changing One Message

Select a message→☒ (Menu)→***Unread/Read***→■→***One***→■→***To Unread/To Read***→■

Changing Multiple Messages at Once

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Unread/Read***→■→***Select Multi***→■→***To Unread/To Read***→■→Select messages→■→☒ (Change)

Changing All Messages in the Folder

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Unread/Read***→■→***All***→■→***To Unread/To Read***→■→***Change***→■

Moving Messages

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Message Box

1 **Select *Received/Sent*→Select a folder→■**

Moving One Message

Select a message→☒ (Menu)→***Move Folder***→■→***One***→■→Select a folder→■

Moving Multiple Messages at Once

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Move Folder***→■→***Select Multi***→■→Select messages→■→☒ (Move)→Select a folder→■

Moving All Messages in the Folder

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Move Folder***→■→***All***→■→Select a folder→■

Server Mail Operations

Using the Mail List

If Retrieve Mode (page 15-24) is set to ***Deferred***, S! Mail is not received automatically and it is temporarily saved in the Server Mail Box when:

- Text exceeds 284 single-byte characters (284 bytes)
- Files are attached
- Message is sent to multiple addresses
- Subject field contains 41 or more single-byte characters
- Sender's address contains 61 or more single-byte characters

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Server Mail

Retrieving and Updating the Mail List

Press ☒ (Update)→***Update***→■

Retrieving Messages

Select a message→☒ (Menu)→***Retrieve***→■→***One/Select Multi/All***→■

Retrieving Multiple Messages at Once

Press ☒ (Menu)→***Retrieve***→■→***Select Multi***→■→Select messages→■→☒ (Get)

Tip

- Retrieved messages are deleted from the Mail List and saved to ***Received***.

Forwarding Server Messages

Forward messages stored on the Server Mail Box to other handsets, PCs, etc.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Server Mail**

1 Select a message→ (Menu)→*Divert*→

2 Select *Keep*/*Do not Keep*→ →Enter a recipient

- When ***Do not Keep*** is selected, the forwarded message is deleted from the Server Mail Box.
- For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

3 Press (Divert)

Deleting Server Messages

Delete messages stored on the Server Mail Box.

Deleting One Message

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Server Mail**

1 Select a message→ (Menu)→*Delete*→ →*One* →

Deleting a Message Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Server Mail***→ →***YES***→

Deleting an S! Mail Notification and Message Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Notif./Server***→ →***YES***→

Deleting Multiple Messages

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Server Mail**

1 Press (Menu)→*Delete*→ →*Select Multi*→

Deleting Multiple Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Server Mail***→

Deleting Multiple S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Notif./Server***→

2 Select messages→

3 Press (Delete)→*YES*→

Deleting All Messages

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Server Mail**

1 Press (Menu)→*Delete*→ →*All Read Mail*/*All* →

Deleting All Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Server Mail***→

Deleting All S! Mail Notifications and Messages Stored on the Server Mail Box
Select ***Notif./Server***→

2 Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→

Checking the Server Mail Box Status

Check the usage rate of the Server Mail Box.

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Server Mail

1 Press [Menu key] (Menu)→*Mailbox Vol.*→[Center key]

● To update the amount of Server Mail Box space, press [Mail key] (Update).

Note

- If the Server Mail Box usage exceeds 80%, a warning window will appear. Retrieve messages stored on the Server Mail Box (page 15-20) or delete them (page 15-21).

Message Settings

Display Settings

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings ▶ Display

Selecting a Message Font Size

Select ***Font Size***→[Center key]→Select the font size→[Center key]

Select the Scroll Unit of the Message Display Window

Select ***Scroll Unit***→[Center key]→Select the scroll unit→[Center key]

Setting the Sender/Subject View for When You Receive a Message

Select ***Show Address***→[Center key]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***Main Display***/***Ext. Display***→[Center key]→Select a viewing mode→[Center key]

Creating Settings

Creating the Simple Input List

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings ▶ Creating

1 Select *Simple Input*→[Center key]→Select an unregistered list→[Center key]→Enter a recipient

● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Setting Groups

Send a message to multiple addresses by using the Group list.

Main menu ▶ Messaging ▶ Settings ▶ Creating

1 Select *Category*→[Center key]

Editing a Group Name

Select a group→[Menu key] (Menu)→***Rename***→[Center key]→Enter a group name→[Center key]

2 Select a group→[Center key]→[Mail key] (Add)→Enter a recipient

● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Switching To/Cc/Bcc for an Address

Select a recipient→[Menu key] (Menu)→***To/Cc/Bcc***→[Center key]→***To***/***Cc***/***Bcc***→[Center key]

15 Messaging

Saving/Inserting a Signature

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Creating**

1 **Select** ***Signature***→■

2 **Select** ***Signature 1***/***Signature 2***→■→**Enter a signature**→■

Signature is saved and the feature is set.

Canceling Signature

Select ***No Signature***→■

Editing Signature

Select ***Signature 1***/***Signature 2***→✉ (Menu)→***Edit***→■→Edit signature→■

Setting the Default Mail Type

Set the type of an outgoing message (SMS/S! Mail) when you create a new message. The mail type can be changed when you create a message, too (pages 15-9, 15-11).

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Creating**

1 **Select** ***Default Type***→■→***SMS***/***S! Mail***→■

Setting the Notification When the Mail Type is Switched

Select ***Notify Type***→■→***Show***/***Hide***→■

Send Settings

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Sending**

Setting the Transmission Confirmation Window

Select ***Confirmation***→■→***Show***/***Hide***→■

Setting the Vibrator When Transmission is Confirmed

Select ***Vibration***→■→***ON***/***OFF***→■

Checking Whether Sent Messages were Delivered to Recipients

Select ***DeliveryCheck***→■→***Ask***/***Do not Ask***→■

Setting the Length of Time a Sent Message is Stored on Server Mail Box

Select ***Expiry***→■→***SMS***/***S! Mail***→■→Select the expiry time→■

Setting the Message Priority Level

Select ***Priority***→■→Select the priority→■

Specifying a Time for Delivering Messages from the Service Center to Recipients

Select ***Delivery Time***→■→Select the delivery time→■

Save a Reply Address

Select ***Reply to***→■→***ON***→■→Enter an address

● For details on how to enter addresses, see page 15-5.

Editing the SMS Center Number (+819066519300)

Select ***Message Ctr***→■ (three times)→Input SMS center number→■

Note

- SMS may become unavailable after changing the SMS Center Number.
- Once SMS Center Number is changed, reset settings (page 12-7) will not restore default number.
- When sending an S! Mail that meets all the criteria listed below, the S! Mail is not returned to the set address even if Reply to is set to ***ON***.
  - When the message text is 284 single-byte characters (284 bytes) or less
  - When there is no attached file
  - When only one address is specified
  - When the subject contains 40 single-byte characters or less
  - When the sender's address contains 60 single-byte characters or less

Receive Settings

Retrieve Mode (S! Mail)

Set method for retrieving messages from the Server Mail Box.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Receiving**

1 **Select** ***Retrieve Mode***→■

2 **Select** ***Immediate/Phone # Only/Deferred***→■

Setting the Automatic Extraction of Attached Files

Set whether to automatically display/play picture and sound files attached to messages.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Receiving**

1 **Select** ***Auto-extract***→■

Setting the Automatic Display of Picture Files

Select ***Picture***→■→***Show/Hide***→■

Setting the Automatic Display of Sound Files

Select ***Sound***→■→***Unmute/Mute***→■

Setting Spam Filter

Sort messages from telephone numbers or email addresses that are not saved in Phone Book to a specific folder.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Receiving**

1 **Select** ***Anti-Spam***→■→**Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select** ***Sort Messages***→■→***Sort/Do not Sort***→■

3 **Select** ***Select Folder***→■→**Select a folder**→■

Setting 3D Pictogram Display

3D Pictogram Display is a 3D animation display function compatible with words, pictographs and emoticons in text. Set the display conditions and background color.

Main menu ▶ **Messaging** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **3D Pictograms**

Setting the Conditions for Displaying Received Messages with a 3D Pictogram Display

Select ***Auto Play***→■→Select the condition→■

Setting the Font and Background Colors for a 3D Pictogram Display

Select ***Colors***→■→Select a color→■

Note

- 3D Pictogram Display does not work with S! Mail notifications and SMS messages with no body text.
- Background playback of a music file may be paused if you use 3D Pictogram Display.

Tip

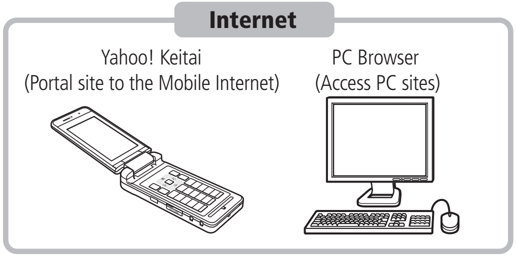
- You can display up to 150 characters regardless of whether the characters are single byte or double byte. "..." indicates after the maximum number of characters has been exceeded.
- You can use ◂▢▸ to change the display speed of 3D Pictogram Display while it is displayed/paused.

16 Internet

Getting Started

About Yahoo! Keitai and PC Website

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Also browse the Internet using PC Browser. In this manual, the Internet is used as a general term and the mobile portal site is referred to as Yahoo! Keitai. Websites accessed using PC Browser is referred to as a PC Website.



■**Using Yahoo! Keitai**

- Browse Mobile Internet sites
- Download images, music, etc.
- Stream movie/music files
- Register to Live Monitor

■**Using PC Browser**

- Browse Web pages designed for PCs

Note

- In an HSDPA (High Speed Downlink Packet Access) area, you can receive at a maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and send at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. Note that sending or receiving very large files can result in high connection charges.

Viewing Pages Stored in Cache Memory

Cache Memory temporarily stores websites you have retrieved.
When cache memory becomes full, the oldest information saved in the cache will be deleted automatically.

- Previous viewed pages may load from Cache Memory. To view the latest data, update the information (page 16-8).
- For details on storage capacity, see "Storage Capacity" on page 22-17.

Tip

- You can delete information that is temporarily saved in the cache (page 16-14).
- Some information cannot be saved in the cache.
- Information saved in the cache is not deleted when you disconnect from the Internet or turn off your handset.

SSL / TLS

SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) are a communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates (page 16-11).

Caution about the Use of SSL/TLS

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage.

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL.

Viewing and Using Websites

Scrolling Pages

When the whole page is not displayed on the browser screen, the scroll bar appears on the right or bottom of the screen. View the remaining part using ⬍/⬌ to scroll the screen. When viewing PC Websites in Viewer position (page 1-13), use TouchSwitch keys ◀/▶ to scroll pages.

Moving Cursor

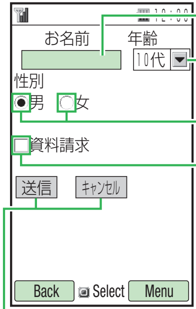
When there are items on the screen that can be selected, move the cursor to the next item by pressing ▼ and to the previous item by pressing ▲. When viewing PC Websites in Viewer position (page 1-13), move the cursor by pressing ▲ or ▼.

Going to the Next Page/Returning to the Previous Page

Websites you have retrieved are temporarily stored. Press ✉ (Back) to return to the previous page. If you press Y! (Menu) and select ***Forward***, it takes you to the next page.

Text Entry & Item Selection

When there are entry fields and selectable items on the screen, operate as follows.



Text Entry Field

You can enter text directly.

Select and press . The text entry window opens. Enter text and press .

Menu List

Select and press to display the menu list. Select an item and press .

Radio Button

Select one of a range of items.

Select ○ and press . The radio button changes to ◉, indicating that the item is selected.

Checkbox

Select □ and press . The checkbox changes to ☑, indicating that the item is selected.

Command Button

Select operations such as sending or canceling what you put in the entry fields. Select and press to execute the indicated command.

Note

- One on the left is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

Accessing Yahoo! Keitai

Access Yahoo! Keitai to search for information. Also connect to a Website by entering an address (URL) like "http://www.△△.ne.jp" directly.

- The " " indicator appears during communication. To disconnect, press (Cancel).

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

Accessing from the Yahoo! Web Menu

Select ***Yahoo! Keitai***→

Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address

Select ***Enter URL***→ →***Direct Entry***→ →Enter a URL→ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select ***Enter URL***→ →***URL History***→ →Select a URL history→ (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages

In History, up to the 20 most recently accessed URLs are saved. You can select a URL from History and access the same website again.

Select ***History***→ →Select a history→

Tip

- Alternatively, you can press [Y!] in Standby to access Yahoo! Keitai.
- While a URL history is selected, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Delete*** to delete the URL history.

Accessing PC Websites

View websites designed for PCs with the PC Browser.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 Select *PC Browser*→[■]

- You can also access the PC Browser menu by pressing [✉] (💻).

Accessing the Home Page

Select ***Homepage***→[■]

Accessing Bookmarked Web Pages

Select ***Bookmarks*** (page 16-6)→[■]

Accessing a Web Page by Directly Entering the Address

Select ***Enter URL***→[■]→***Direct Entry***→[■]→Enter a URL→[■] (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from URL History

Select ***Enter URL***→[■]→***URL History***→[■]→Select a URL history→[■] (twice)

Accessing a Web Page from Accessed Web Pages

Select ***History***→[■]→Select a history→[■]

2 Select *Always Ask*/*Ask Once Only*→[■]

- If you select ***Ask Once Only***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Note

- Some websites may not be displayed correctly or it may take time to open the site depending on the site.

Saved Pages

If you save frequently accessed information (pages) to Saved Pages, the information can be viewed without accessing the Internet later.

Saving Displayed Pages to Saved Pages

1 Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Saved Pages*→[■]

2 Select *Save*→[■]→Enter a title→[■]

Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- If you save a page with the same URL as a page already saved in Saved Pages, it is saved as a different page.

Tip

- URLs and attached data which include linked information are saved in Saved Pages.

Displaying Saved Pages

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 **Select *Saved Pages*→■**

Displaying Saved Pages of PC Websites
Select *PC Browser*→■→*Saved Pages*→■

2 **Select the title of the page→■**

Bookmarks

If you bookmark frequently accessed pages, you will be able to access them quickly and easily.

Adding a Bookmark

1 **Display a page→Y! (Menu)→*Bookmarks*→■**

2 **Select *Save*→■**

- If you don't edit a title or URL, press ■ (Save).

3 **Press ✉ (Edit)→Select the title field→■→Edit the title→■→✉ (OK)→■**

- Select a folder when adding to the folder.

Using Bookmarks

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 **Select *Bookmarks*→■**

Using Bookmarks for PC Websites
Select *PC Browser*→■→*Bookmarks*→■

2 **Select the title of the page→■**

After communication with the Service Center, information is displayed.

Tip

- You can call up information from Bookmarks while viewing a page. Display a page → Y! (Menu) → ***Bookmarks*** → ***View List***

Editing Bookmarks

Create folders to organize bookmarks, change bookmark titles or folder names, or delete them.

Creating a Folder

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 **Select *Bookmarks*→■**

Creating a Folder for a PC Website
Select *PC Browser*→■→*Bookmarks*→■

2 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Create Folder*→■**

3 Enter a folder name→[■]

Editing a Bookmark Title

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 Select *Bookmarks*→[■]

Editing a Bookmark Title of PC Website
Select *PC Browser*→[■]→*Bookmarks*→[■]

2 Select a bookmark→[Y!] (Menu)

3 Select *Edit*→[■]→Select the title field→[■]

4 Edit the title→[■]→[✉] (OK)

- To rename a folder, select a folder you want to rename from the Bookmarks list, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Rename Folder***.

Moving a Bookmark to Another Folder

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 Select *Bookmarks*→[■]

Moving a Bookmark of a PC Website
Select *PC Browser*→[■]→*Bookmarks*→[■]

Moving One Bookmark
Select a bookmark→[Y!] (Menu)→*Move*→[■]→*One*→[■]

Moving Multiple Bookmarks
Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Move*→[■]→*Select Multi*→[■]→Select a bookmark→[■]→[✉] (Move)

Moving All Bookmarks
Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Move*→[■]→*All*→[■]

2 Select a folder→[■]

Sending a URL in an SMS or S! Mail Message

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 Select *Bookmarks*→[■]

Sending the URL of a PC Website
Select *PC Browser*→[■]→*Bookmarks*→[■]

2 Select a bookmark→[Y!] (Menu)→*Send URL/As Mail*→[■]

Deleting Bookmarks

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 Select *Bookmarks*→[■]

Deleting Bookmarks of PC Websites
Select *PC Browser*→[■]→*Bookmarks*→[■]

Deleting One Bookmark
Select a bookmark→[Y!] (Menu)→*Delete*→[■]→*One*→[■]→*YES*→[■]

Deleting Multiple Bookmarks
Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Delete*→[■]→*Select Multi*→[■]→Select a bookmark→[■]→[✉] (Delete)→*YES*→[■]

Deleting All Bookmarks

Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Delete*→[●]→*All*→[●]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→[●]

Tip

- To delete a folder, select a folder you want to delete from the Bookmarks list and select [Y!] (Menu) → *Delete Folder*.

Setting Browser Security

If you set browser security, your security code (page 1-25) needs to be entered to display Bookmarks, Saved Pages, Enter URL or History.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai**

1 **Select** ***Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Enter URL/History*****→[Y!] (Menu)**

Setting Browser Security for a Bookmark Folder

Select *Bookmarks*→[●]→Select a folder→[Y!] (Menu)

Setting Browser Security for PC Websites

Select *PC Browser*→[●]→*Bookmarks/Saved Pages/Enter URL/History*→[Y!] (Menu)

2 **Select** ***Security Lock*****→[●]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select** ***Lock/Unlock*****→[●]**

Operations for Web Pages

Entering a URL Directly to Access a Website

While displaying pages, connect to a homepage by entering an address (URL) like "http://www.△△.co.jp " directly.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*****Enter URL*****→[●]**

- To access a website from access history, select ***URL History*** (pages 16-4, 16-5).

2 **Select** ***Direct Entry*****→[●]→Enter a URL→[●] (twice)**

Switching between Yahoo! Keitai and PC Websites

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*****Change View*****→[●]→*****Current Page/Linked Page*****→[●]**

2 **Select** ***Always Ask/Ask Once Only*****→[●]**

- If you select ***Ask Once Only***, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Updating the Information

Update the displayed page.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*****Reload Page*****→[●]**

Using Linked Information

Use linked phone numbers, email addresses or URLs to make calls, create messages or access websites. Also add phone numbers and email addresses to Phone Book.

● Available only when the phone number, email address or URL is underlined.

1 Display a page

Making a Call/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked phone number→[■]→*Call*/*To Phone Book*→[■]

Sending Message/Adding to Phone Book

Select a linked email address→[■]→*As Mail*/*To Phone Book*→[■]

Accessing a Website

Select a linked URL→[■]

Copying Text from a Page

Copy text from a page to the clipboard.

1 Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Text Copy*→[■]

2 Move the cursor to the first/last character of the text range→[■]→Specify a range of text to copy→[■]

● Only characters and pictographs can be copied.

Useful Features While Viewing a Page

Searching for a Particular Character String on a Page

1 Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]

2 Select *Search*→[■]→Enter text to search for→[■]

3 Select the search method→[■]→*Up*/*Down* or *ON*/*OFF*→[■]→[✉] (Search)

Jumping to the Top or End of Web Page

1 Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]

2 Select *To Top*/*To End*→[■]

Sending URLs via SMS/S! Mail

Display the Create Message window with the URL pasted to the text.

1 Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]→*Send URL*→[■]

Saving a Page to Event

Save a displayed page to events in the Calendar. A saved page is stored in Saved Pages.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]**

2 **Select *To Event*→[■]→Save the event (page 13-15)**

Saving a Page to My Locations

When a page with location information is displayed, the information can be saved to My Locations.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]**

2 **Select *To Locations*→[■]→Save the location information (page 19-4)**

Viewing Properties of the Web Page

Check a title, file size, available/unavailable to save/forward/memory card transfer or URL of the page.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]→*Details*→[■]**

2 **Select *Page Details*→[■]**

Displaying a Selected Frame in the Whole Screen

In a page that is designed for PCs and has multiple frames, a frame can be selected and maximize it to fit the whole screen.

1 **Display a page→Select a frame**

2 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]→*Frame In*→[■]**

Returning to the All-Frames Screen

Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]→*Frame Out*→[■]

Operating Flash® Playback

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]**

2 **Select *Flash(R) Menu*→[■]→*Play from Top*/*Play*→[■]**

Pausing Playback

Select *Stop*→[■]

Enlarging/Reducing a Page

1 **Display a page of PC Website→[Y!] (Menu)→*Tool*→[■]→*Zoom*→[■]**

2 **Select Magnification/Shrinkage Percentage→[■]**

Changing Display Mode

Switch Display view between reduced view and standard view.

1 Display a page of PC Website→ (Menu)→*Tool* →

2 Select *PC Screen/Small Screen*→

Changing the Direction

You can switch the direction to be displayed on a PC Website between horizontal and vertical.

1 Display a page of PC Website→ (Menu)→*Tool* →

2 Select *Landscape/Portrait*→

Note

- Portrait view unavailable in Viewer position (page 1-13).

Checking Server Certificates

While viewing a page that supports SSL/TLS connections, the applied certificate can be viewed.

- For details on SSL/TLS, see page 16-3.

1 Display a page which is protected by SSL/TLS→ (Menu)→*Tool*→ →*Details*→

2 Select *Session Info.*→

Using Files in Web Pages

Perform various operations such as saving and displaying/playing picture and melody files in Web pages.

Saving the File to Data Folder

1 Display a page that has a file→ (Menu)

2 Select *Saving Mode*→ →Select a file→

3 Select *Save*→ →*Phone Memory/Memory Card* →

Saving a Pictograph File to My Pictograms in Data Folder

Select ***Save My Pict.***→ →***Phone Memory/Memory Card*** →

Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.

16

Internet

Viewing File Properties

1 Display a page that has a file→[Y!] (Menu)

2 Select *Saving Mode*→[■]→Select a file→[■]

3 Select *File Details*→[■]

Playing or Displaying the File Data

1 Display a page that has a file→[Y!] (Menu)

2 Select *Saving Mode*→[■]→Select a file→[■]

3 Select *Play/View*→[■]

Note

- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Downloading Files from Links

1 Open page

2 Select a link→[■]

Downloading begins.

Playing or Displaying the File

Select ***Play/View***→[■]

Saving the File to Data Folder

Select ***Save***→[■]

Viewing File Properties

Select ***File Details***→[■]

Saving and Setting the File as a Wallpaper

Select ***Settings***→[■] (twice)

Saving and Setting the File as a Ringtone

Select ***Save & Set***→[■]→***Ring Song・Tone/Music***→[■]→***Voice Call/Video Call/Message/DeliveryCheck/Missed Call/Circle Talk/Hot Status***→[■] (twice)

Note

- Some pages may not be saved because of copyright restrictions, etc.
- Some files may not be displayed/played properly on your handset.

Tip

- For details on streaming, see page 8-10.
- When you save a file and set it as a wallpaper, some files can be cut or resized by pressing [Y!] (Cut) or [✉] (Resize) respectively after they are displayed.

Browser Settings

- To configure the PC Website Browser, select ***PC Browser*** from ***Yahoo! Keitai*** and then ***Settings***.

Changing Font Size

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Font Size*→■→Select a font size→■**

Tip

- To change the size of text while viewing a page, press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Settings*** → ■ → ***Font Size*** on the page.

Setting Scroll Unit

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Scroll Unit*→■→Select a scroll unit→■**

Tip

- To change the scroll unit while viewing a page, press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Settings*** → ■ → ***Scroll Unit***.

Changing the Text Encoding Type

When text is not correctly shown in the page, change the text encoding type to show them again.

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→■**

2 **Select *Encoding Type*→■→Select a text encoding type→■**

Adjusting Sound Volume

1 **Display a page→[Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→■→*Sound Volume*→■**

2 **Adjust the sound volume→■**

Refusing the Reception of Images or Melodies (Text Browse)

Set your handset to receive only text information from the Internet which will shorten the amount of time to complete a transmission.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Downloads*→■**

Refusing the Reception of Images

Select ***Images***→■→***Do not Download***→■

Refusing the Reception of Melodies

Select ***Sounds***→■→***Do not Download***→■

Tip

- Images and melodies refused are shown by the icons " " and " ".
- To set the text browse while viewing a page, press [Y!] (Menu) → ***Settings*** → [■] → ***Downloads*** on the page.

Setting a Warning Window When Changing Browsers

Set whether or not a warning window appears when you change between PC Browser and Yahoo! Keitai.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **PC Browser** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Warning***→[■]→***PC Browser/Yahoo! Keitai***→[■]

2 **Select** ***Show/Hide***→[■]

Memory Management

Deleting Cache Memory

Clear the temporarily saved information in Cache memory.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory Mgr.**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**→***Clear Cache***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Deleting Cookies

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory Mgr.**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**→***Clear Cookie***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Clearing Authentication Info

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Memory Mgr.**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**→***Clear Auth...***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Security Settings

Manufacture Number Setting

Set whether to automatically send the International Mobile Equipment Identity (IMEI) of your handset as your User ID when a request is received from the network.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Manufacture #***→[■]→***Send/Do not Send***→[■]

Referer Setting

Specify whether the link source page (referer page) should be sent when you move from one website to the next. When ***Send*** is selected for Send Referer, the referer page sent from the browser will be inspected, and requests from invalid pages will be denied.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Send Referer***→■→***Send/Do not Send***→■

Enabling/Disabling Cookies

Cookies are the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and other information. The information is sent from the server, saved temporarily in your handset and used for contents service. If Cookie is set to ***Enable***, the information such as the date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Cookie***→■

2 **Select** ***Enable/Disable/Always Ask***→■

Script Setting

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when showing a Web page with which script (program) has been set.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Script***→■→***Ask Once/Enable/Disable/Always Ask***→■

Confirming the Root Certificates

Confirm details on a certificate issued from a certificate authority.

● For details on SSL/TLS, see page 16-3.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Root Certif.***→■→**Select the root certificate** →■

Authentication Setting

Specify whether user name/password authentication information should be retained when authentication is performed on a website.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Authentica...***→■→***Retain Info/Per Session/Do not Retain***→■

Setting SSL Communication

Set whether or not your handset shows a confirmation window when sending out encoded data by SSL communication.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings** ▶ **Security**

1 **Select** ***Session Info.*** **→ ■ →** ***Show/Hide*** **→ ■**

Specifying the Destination to Save Downloaded Contents

Specify the destination to save contents such as music files when you download them from Web pages.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Storage*** **→ ■ →** ***Phone Memory/Memory Card*** **→ ■**

Tip

- To change the destination while viewing a page, press Y! (Menu) → *Settings* → ■ → *Storage* on the page.

Initializing Your Browser

Return data, such as browser setting, Bookmarks, Saved Pages, access history, authentication information, cookie and cache, to the default settings.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Browser Reset*** **→ ■ → Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select** ***YES*** **→ ■**

Resetting Various Settings of the Browser

Return the browser's various settings to the default settings.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select** ***Reset Setting*** **→ ■ → Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select** ***YES*** **→ ■**

Live Monitor

Confirm various pieces of the latest news delivered by information service providers and S! Loop (page 18-2) items in Active Window (pages 13-2, 13-4) by automatic updates recurring every period of time as you have specified.

Registering New Information to be Displayed

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Live Monitor**

1 **Select *List*/*S! Loop List*→■**

2 **Select *Contents List*/*S! Loop*→■→*YES*→■**

3 **Select contents→■**

● Follow the onscreen instructions to register contents.

Note

- Live Monitor flash news and S! Loop list are not automatically updated from late at night until early in the morning.

Tip

- From the Live Monitor List/S! Loop List, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
  Update*/*Delete
- The items registered in S! Loop will be shown in the S! Loop list. For details, see the S! Loop Help.

Specifying the Image Display

Set whether or not to display images of new information on Live Monitor in Active Window.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Live Monitor** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Image*→■→*Show*/*Hide*→■**

Resetting Live Monitor

Delete all registered Live Monitor lists and S! Loop list (left), and return the ***Auto Refresh*** (page 13-5) and ***Image*** (above) settings to their defaults.

Main menu ▶ **Yahoo! Keitai** ▶ **Live Monitor** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Reset*→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *YES*→■**

17 S! Appli

Getting Started

Download an S! Appli from Web pages providing S! Appli on the Internet. Downloading uses the same amount of communication charges as when you use the Internet.

- For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).
- You can download and use only S! Appli that are specially designed for SoftBank handsets.

About S! Appli

■Downloading S! Appli (page 17-3)

S! Appli such as games and 3D images downloaded from the Internet will be stored in the S! Appli Library.

■Network S! Appli (right)

You can enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network.

■Setting Screensaver (page 17-6)

Set an S! Appli as a Screensaver.

About Network S! Appli

There are S! Appli which operate only on the handset at the time of use, and S! Appli (Network S! Appli) which need to connect to the network (Internet). Enjoy games and acquire the information in real time by connecting to the network for Network S! Appli.

- When you use a Network S! Appli, a communication fee is charged each time the application connects to a network.
- When using a Network S! Appli while ***Access*** under Security (page 17-5) is set to ***Blanket***, the handset is automatically connected to a network without displaying the alert.

Downloading S! Appli

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 **Select *More S! Appli*→[■]→*YES*→[■]→ Select an S! Appli→*Download*→[■]**

2 **Select *Phone Memory*/*Memory Card*→[■]**

Downloading begins.

● A confirmation window is displayed when the download is completed.

Note

- If the battery level is low, the application may not be completely downloaded.
- If you replace the USIM card, downloaded applications will no longer be available.

Tip

- **If the memory of the destination to save the file is full or if the number of items to save is exceeded:**
  - If the destination is your handset, a confirmation window is displayed. Select ***YES*** and then delete unnecessary data.
  - If the destination is a memory card, you cannot download S! Appli. Delete unnecessary files of S! Appli (page 17-4) or save them on the handset.

Starting S! Appli

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 **Select an S! Appli→[■]**

Tip

- The handset behavior when there is an incoming voice/video call or message while an S! Appli is running is determined by the priority settings (page 17-6).
- Mini Tool (page 1-23) may not appear depending on the S! Appli display size.

Suspending/Resuming/Ending S! Appli

Suspending/Resuming/Ending

1 **While an S! Appli is running, press [POWER]**

2 **Select *Pause*/*Resume*/*End*→[■]**

Resuming/Ending S! Appli Suspended

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 **Select *Resume*/*Exit*→[■]**

S! Appli Library

Deleting S! Appli

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

Deleting One Application

Select an application→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***One***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Deleting Multiple Applications

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***Select Multi***→[■]→Select applications→[■]→[✉] (Delete)→***YES***→[■]

Deleting All Applications

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***All***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[■]

Note

- If you delete a preinstalled S! Appli, ***Reset All*** (page 12-7) will not restore the deleted application.

Tip

- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be deleted. This depends on the type of the preinstalled S! Appli.

Switching the S! Appli Library Display

Change the S! Appli Library display from the handset (Data Folder) library to the memory card library. The "[SD]" indicator appears while the memory card library is displayed.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 Press [✉] ([SD])

- To change from the memory card to the handset, press [✉] ([handset]).

Viewing S! Appli Properties

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 Select an S! Appli→[Y!] (Menu)→*Details*→[■]

Tip

- You can confirm such specific data as names, vendors, and versions of applications in properties. The items to be confirmed vary according to the S! Appli.

Moving S! Appli

Move an S! Appli to the S! Appli Library on the handset (Data Folder) or to the S! Appli Library on the memory card.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

Moving One Application

Select an application→[Y!] (Menu)→***Move***→[■]→***One***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

Moving Multiple Applications

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Move***→[■]→***Select Multi***→[■]→Select applications→[■]→[✉] (Move)→***YES***→[■]

Moving All Applications

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Move***→[■]→***All***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[■]

Note

- Standby settings will be canceled if the S! Appli set as Screensaver is moved to the memory card.
- There are some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved anywhere according to the type of the preinstalled S! Appli. There are also some cases when an S! Appli cannot be moved to the memory card according to the type of S! Appli.
- If there is the same S! Appli on the handset or on the memory card, the S! Appli will be overwritten.

Security Settings

Set your handset to alert you before making calls or network connection, etc., while an S! Appli is running.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Library**

1 **Select an S! Appli→[Y!] (Menu)→*Security*→[■]**

2 **Select an item→[■]**

Permit All Functions and Do Not Display Alert

Select ***Blanket***→[■]

Display Alert Each Time You Access a Function

Select ***Oneshot***→[■]

Display Alert Each Time an S! Appli is Activated

Select ***Session***→[■]

Do Not Execute Any Function and Do Not Display Alert

Select ***No***→[■]

Tip

- The type of display methods varies according to the function.

S! Appli Settings

Setting the Screensaver

Set an S! Appli for Standby. Also set the starting time of the S! Appli set as the Screensaver.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Screensaver*→[●]**

Setting an S! Appli as Screensaver

Select ***Screensavers***→[●]→Select an application→[●]→***YES***→[●]

Setting the S! Appli Start Time

Press [Y!] (Menu)→***Start Time***→[●]→Enter a start time→[●]

Note

- Even if there is an incoming call, Answering Machine (page 13-8) will not start operating when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver or when the ***Voice Call*** of ***Calls&Alarms*** (right) is set as ***Continue Apps***.
- According to the type of application, there are some cases when a Screensaver application may pause if the time specified for power saving (page 11-11) is over.

Tip

- If you press [POWER] when an S! Appli is set as the Screensaver, the S! Appli set as the Screensaver will pause, but its Standby setting will not be canceled. If you want to cancel the S! Appli set as the Screensaver, select ***OFF*** at ***Screensaver***.
- You can also set the Standby settings if you select an S! Appli available as Screensaver in the S! Appli Library (page 17-4).

Setting Priority While Running an S! Appli

Set whether to pause the S! Appli to put a priority on an incoming call or to have a notification only without interrupting the S! Appli, when you receive a call, etc. while operating the S! Appli.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Calls&Alarms*→[●]**

Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Voice Call

Select ***Voice Call***→[●]→***Pause Apps***/***Continue Apps***→[●]

Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Video Call

Select ***Video Call***→[●]→***Pause Apps***/***Continue Apps***→[●]

Setting the Priority for When There is an Incoming Message

Select ***Message***→[●]→***Pause Apps***/***Continue Apps***→[●]

Setting the Priority for When the Alarm Plays

Select ***Alarm***→[●]→***Pause Apps***/***Continue Apps***→[●]

S! Appli Volume

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Volume*→■**

2 **Adjust the volume→■**

Tip

- If you have set the manner mode as ***Original Mode*** (page 11-2), the sound volume will follow the S! Appli volume set at the Original Mode.

Backlight Settings

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Backlight*→■**

Setting the Backlight to Display

Select ***ON/OFF***→■→***Always ON***/***Always OFF***/***Same as Phone***→■

Setting the Backlight to Blink

Select ***Blink***→■→***ON/OFF***→■

Tip

- If you select ***Same as Phone***, your handset will follow the backlight settings (page 11-10).

S! Appli Vibration

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli** ▶ **Settings**

1 **Select *Vibration*→■**

2 **Select *ON/OFF*→■**

Updating the Information of an S! Appli on the Memory Card

You need to update the information of S! Appli on the memory card after you have used it (editing, adding, or deleting data) on other SoftBank handsets or PCs.

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli**

1 **Select *Card Sync*→■→*YES*→■**

Tip

- There are some cases when it takes a certain amount of time to complete updates according to the numbers and sizes of the S! Appli.

Confirming the License Information of an S! Appli

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli**

1 **Select *Information*→ [■]**

Confirming the Route Certificate of an S! Appli

Main menu ▶ **S! Appli**

1 **Select *Certification*→ [■] →Select the certification →[■]**

18 Communications

S! Town (Japanese Only)

S! Town is an online communication application. S! Town is a 3D virtual space. Enjoy the S! Town virtual space e.g. when chatting or shopping.

- S! Appli for S! Town is required to use S! Town. S! Appli ***S! Town*** is preinstalled in the handset.
- Preinstalled S! Appli ***S! Town*** cannot be deleted.
- Packet transmission fees apply to use S! Town. The fees may be expensive.
- If you subscribe to Website access restrictions, you cannot use S! Town.

Using S! Town

When you use S! Town for the first time, a user registration (free) and profile registration are required. Please read and agree to the terms of service before the registration.

See S! Appli ***S! Town*** Help for details about using S! Town.

Main menu ▶ **Communications**

1 **Select *S! Town*→[■]**

- You can view the S! Town registration status and cancel the service from Yahoo! Keitai. See S! Appli ***S! Town*** Help for details.
- Upgrade notification may appear when you start S! Town. Follow the onscreen instructions to upgrade S! Town.

Using the Library

The library stores S! Appli that expand the functions of S! Town. Downloaded S! Appli are automatically stored in the library.

S! Appli are not preinstalled in the library.

Main menu ▶ **Communications**

1 **Select *S! Town*→[✉] (Libr.)**

- You can start S! Appli from the library. Depending on the types of S! Appli, S! Appli ***S! Town*** may start.

S! Loop (Japanese Only)

Use S! Loop to keep a diary on the web or exchange information via BBS.

Main menu ▶ **Communications**

1 **Select *S! Loop*→[■]→*YES*→[■]**

S! Loop top menu appears.

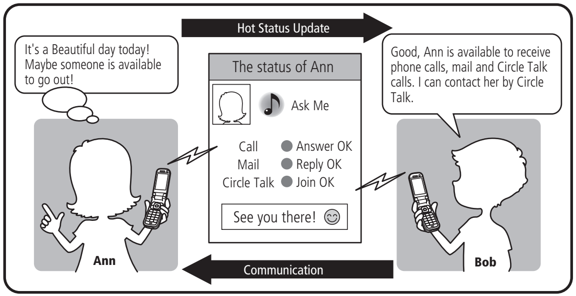
- See S! Loop Help for operations.

Hot Status

Share your current mood and availability to receive incoming calls, messages or Circle Talk calls with your Hot Status members.

It is necessary to obtain the person's consent before saving him/her to Hot Status Members List.

If you save your Hot Status members to the Members List of Active Window, their Hot Status information can be easily checked from Active Window.



Note

- If IP Service (page 12-5) is set to ***OFF***, Hot Status is unavailable.

Tip

- Hot Status information is updated automatically. You can also update it manually (page 18-11).

Subscription

- To use Hot Status, subscription is required and a monthly subscription fee is applied.

About Hot Status Notifications

When a Hot Status notification arrives, the ring tone sounds and a message appears.

There are five types of Hot Status notifications as shown below.

Type	Description
Saving Completed	Your invitation has been accepted. Once an invitation is accepted, the accepted parties can view each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Failed	Your invitation was either rejected, the other party did not reply within 24 hours or his/her Members List already contained 30 people.
Deletion Request	The other party has deleted you from his/her Hot Status Members List. After receiving this notification, you and the person can no longer check each other's Hot Status information.
Saving Request	The other party has added you to his/her Hot Status Members List. After you accept the invitation, you and the person can check each other's Hot Status information. When you receive a Saving Request, "[icon]" appears in Standby. The Saving Request is shown with "[icon]" in the Hot Status Notification List.

Communications

18

Type	Description
Notification	The network connection failed and Hot Status has automatically become ***Offline***.

Checking Hot Status Notifications

Hot Status notifications can be checked in the Hot Status Notification List.

1 **When Information Prompt appears, select *Notification*→[■]→Select the Hot Status notification →[■]**

- Select ***YES*** to display the Hot Status Members List after checking Saving Completed or Deletion Request notifications.

Tip

- Hot Status notifications are deleted from the Hot Status Notification List after you operate them.
- A message is displayed if you receive a Hot Status notification while operating in certain Hot Status windows. Select ***Check Now*** to display the Hot Status Notification List. To continue the current operation, select ***Check Later***.
- You can also display the Hot Status Notification List while the Hot Status Members List is displayed by pressing [Y!] (Menu) and selecting ***Notification***.
- Press [Y!] (Menu) while the Hot Status Notification List is displayed to perform the following:
  Delete/Delete All

Creating a Hot Status Members List

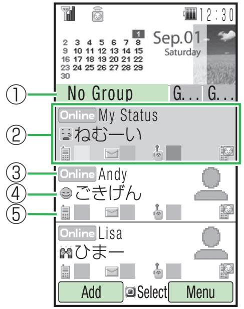
Save up to 30 people to your Hot Status Members List. Organize and manage entries by group. Save up to ten people per group or 30 people to ***No Group***.

Note

- You can only save people with Hot Status-enabled SoftBank handsets to the Hot Status Members List.
- To create a Hot Status Members List, set My Status to ***Online*** (page 18-8).

Hot Status Members List Window

The members saved to each group are shown in a list.



①**Group tab**

Switches the group to be displayed.

②**My Status**

Information about you. Always displayed on the top regardless of which group is displayed.

③**Hot Status connection status**

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

④**Condition**

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

⑤**Availability**

Indicates member status and availability by color.

Calls

Green: Available　Yellow: Available for Emergencies

Red: Unavailable　White: Unknown

Mail

Green: Available　Yellow: Will Check Later

Red: Unavailable　White: Unknown

Circle Talk

Green: Available/Auto Join　Red: Unavailable

Tip

- Press (Menu) while the Hot Status Members List is displayed to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):
  Add Members/Call/Call CT/To Phone Book/Settings/Active Window/Notification/Rename/Change Group/Delete

Saving Entries to Hot Status Members List

When you add a person to your Hot Status Members List, an invitation is sent.

- When the person accepts your invitation, a Saving Completed notification arrives (page 18-3) and that person is saved to Hot Status Members List where you can check the person's status.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 Press (Add)→*Phone Book/Direct Input*→

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).

2 Select a person or enter a phone number→

To Select a Group

Select →→Select a group→

Communications

18

3 Press ✉ (Save)→*YES*→■

A Saving Request notification is sent to the person, and ***Waiting*** is displayed in the Hot Status Members List.

Note

- A Saving Failed notification is sent when a person's Hot Status Members List already contains 30 people.

Tip

- If My Status is ***Offline***, a message asking you to go ***Online*** is displayed when you start up Hot Status. Select ***YES*** to change to ***Online***.
- If you have not saved any members when you start up Hot Status, a message asking you if you want to add members is displayed. Select ***YES*** to add a new member.
- After you have selected a member, press Y! (Menu) and select ***Change*** to select a different member.

Saving an Entry to Hot Status Members List from a Saving Request

If you get an invitation to join a person's Hot Status Members List, you will receive a Saving Request notification (page 18-3). If you accept, the other person is saved to the Hot Status Members List and you and the person can check out each other's Hot Status information.

1 When Information Prompt appears, select *Notification*→■

2 Select the Saving Request notification→■→*YES*→■

- If you select ***NO***, a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person and the person is not saved to the Hot Status Members List.

Note

- If you select ***NO*** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, you cannot send the person an invitation to the Hot Status Members List for 24 hours.
- Although you select ***NO*** and a Saving Failed notification is returned to the other person, if the other person does not receive the notification because he/she is outside the service area or offline for more than 24 hours, you will receive another Saving Request notification when the person comes online.

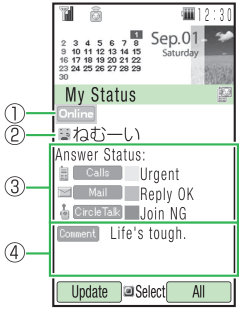
Tip

- You can set your handset to reject Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book or you can set it to reject all Saving Requests (page 18-10).

Editing Your Hot Status Information

Open My Status window to edit your current mood or switch between online and offline.

My Status Window



①**Hot Status connection status**

Set the connection to your network.

②**Mood**

Set your current feelings and condition.

③**Answer status**

Set your reception conditions for each of the various transmission methods.

④**Comment**

Enter a message to show to the other members.

Changing My Status

Change your Hot Status information (My Status).

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 Select My Status→[■]

● In Standby, press and hold [✱] to display My Status.

To Change Your Mood

Select the mood→[■]→Select an item→[■]

To Change Your Answer Status

Select the answer status to be changed→[■]→Select an item→[■]

To Change All Your Answer Statuses

Press [Y!] (All)→Select an item→[■]→Confirm the settings→[■]

● To customize your status settings

Press [Y!] (All)→*Customize*→[■]→[✉] (Edit)→Set each item→[✉] (Save)→[■]

2 Press [✉] (Update)

Entering Comments

Enter a message to display as Hot Status information.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 Select My Status→[■]

● In Standby, press and hold [✱] to display My Status.

2 Select the Comment field→[■]

3 Enter a comment→[■]→[✉] (Update)

Switching between Online and Offline

If you switch to offline, you and other people cannot check each others' current condition. Also, you will not be able to create Hot Status Members List or talk to people with Circle Talk.

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Hot Status

1 Select My Status→[■]

- In Standby, press and hold [✱] to display My Status.

2 Select Online / Offline→[■]

To Switch to Online

Select *Online*→[■]→*YES*→[■]

To Switch to Offline

Select *Offline*→[■]→[✉] (Update)

Editing Hot Status Members List

Editing a Group Name

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Hot Status

1 Select a group with [◉]→[Y!] (Menu)→*Rename* →[■]

2 Edit the group name→[■]

Tip

- You cannot change the name of ***No Group***.

Changing a Group

Hot Status members can be moved to different groups.

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Hot Status

1 Select a group with [◉]

To Change One Member

Select a member→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change Group*→[■]→*One*→[■] → Select a group→[■]

To Select Multiple Members to Change

Select an entry other than My Status→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change Group* →[■]→*Select Multi*→[■]→Select some members→[■]→ [✉] (Move)→Select a group→[■]

To Change All Members

Select an entry other than My Status→[Y!] (Menu)→*Change Group* →[■]→*All*→[■]→Select a group→[■]

Tip

- If you move multiple or all members to a group so that the group exceeds ten members, the group will not be changed and the screen returns to the multiple members selection window. Reselect the members so that the group does not exceed ten members.

Deleting a Member

When you delete a member from your Hot Status Members List, a Deletion Request notification is sent to that person.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 Use [◉] to select a group

To Delete One Member

Select a member→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***One***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

To Select Multiple Members to Delete

Select an entry other than My Status→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***Select Multi***→[■]→Select some members→[■]→[✉] (Delete)→***YES***→[■]

To Delete All Members

Select an entry other than My Status→[Y!] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***All***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[■]

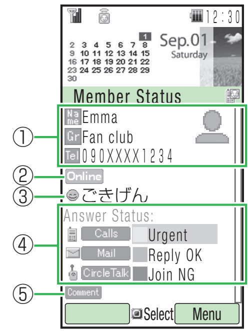
Note

- After a member is deleted from the Hot Status Members List, you cannot send/receive a Saving Request notification to/from that person for 24 hours.

Checking Members' Hot Status Information

In the Member Status window, check the current condition of members and call them, send them messages or talk to them with Circle Talk.

Member Status Window



①**Member information**

Shows the name and image saved to Phone Book, Hot Status group and phone number.

②**Hot Status connection status**

Shows the current network connection status of the member.

③**Mood**

Shows the current feelings and condition of the member.

④**Answer status**

Shows the reception conditions for various transmission methods in color.

⑤**Comment**

Shows a message from the member.

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Hot Status

1 **Select a group with [←→] → Select a member with [↑↓] → [●]**

2 **Contact the member according to their current status**

To Make a Call

Select the answer status for Calls → [●] → [Y!] (Menu) → ***Voice Call***/***Video Call*** → [●]

To Send a Message

Select the answer status for Mail → [●] → Create a message → [✉] (Send)

To Make a Circle Talk Call

Select the answer status for Circle Talk → [●]

Tip

- When signal reception is poor, the latest Hot Status information may not be displayed. In this case, update the information manually (page 18-11).
- For a Hot Status member saved with a phone number, press [Y!] (Menu) in the Member Status window, select ***Edit*** and add the member to the Phone Book. The name and photo saved to Phone Book are displayed in the Hot Status Members List window and in the Member Status window.
- If you perform ***Reset All*** or ***Clear Memory*** (page 12-7), the names and images of members will no longer be displayed and they will all belong to ***No Group***.
- Press [Y!] (Menu) while the Member Status window is displayed to perform the following:
  Edit/***Change Group***

Saving Entries to the Active Window Members List

Save members whose condition you often check to the Active Window Members List (page 13-2).

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Hot Status

1 **Select a group with [←→] → Select a member with [↑↓]**

2 **Press [Y!] (Menu) → *Active Window* → [●] (twice) → *Not Registered* → [●]**

Tip

- You can also display My Status in Active Window.

Hot Status Settings

Setting How to Respond to Saving Requests

You can set in advance how to respond when you receive Saving Request notifications.

The response types are shown below.

Response type	Description
Always Answer	All Saving Requests are accepted.
Known Only	Only Saving Requests from people saved in Phone Book are accepted. A Saving Failed notification is sent to Saving Requests from people that are not saved in Phone Book.
Do not Answer	A Saving Failed notification is sent to all Saving Requests.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■]→*Request Reply* →[■]**

2 **Select a response type→[■]**

Editing Your Mood and Setting All Answer Statuses

Edit the mood to be displayed in My Status. Also, your answer statuses can be set all at once.

The following items are set when you purchase your handset.

● You cannot edit the mood item that is currently set in My Status window (page 18-7).

ごきげん (Good mood)	ハッピー (Happy)	ひまー (Free)
あそぼー (Let's have fun)	やばっ (Oh no!)	がっくり (Disappointed)
うえーん (Weeping)	ぷんぷん (Upset)	めらめら (Flaming)
だるーい (Lazy)	ねむーい (Sleepy)	連絡して (Contact me)
誘って (Ask me)	ひみつ (Secret)	Optional (two)

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■]→*Status Setting* →[■]**

2 **Select an item→[■] (Edit)**

To Set an Icon

Select ***Icon***→[■]→Select an icon→[■]

To Set a Label

Select ***Label***→[■]→Enter a label→[■]

To Set All Answer Statuses

Select ***Set All***→[■]→Select an item→[■]

● If you select ***Customize***, the user settings you changed with [Y!] (All) in the My Status window (page 18-7) are applied.

3 **Press [✉] (Save) → *YES* → [■]**

Tip

● You can edit mood items from My Status window (page 18-7): select your current mood in My Status window → [■] → Select a mood item you want to edit → [✉] (Edit)

Updating Hot Status Information Manually

Hot Status Information is updated automatically, but you can also update it manually.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Hot Status**

1 **Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Settings*→[■]→*Status Update*→[■]**

Circle Talk Basics

Circle Talk is a walkie-talkie style communication service. Talk one-on-one or with a group of people (up to ten people) using Circle Talk compatible SoftBank handsets. Press and hold [key] to talk (one person at a time) and release the key when finished talking. Check the Circle Talk session window to check each participant's status and see who is currently talking.

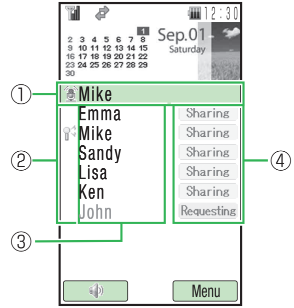
Note

- If IP Service (page 12-5) is set to ***OFF***, Circle Talk is unavailable.
- When Hot Status connection status (page 18-7) is ***Offline***, Circle Talk is unavailable. Switch to ***Online*** to use Circle Talk (page 18-8).
- Circle Talk is unavailable during voice or video calls. Also, you cannot receive another Circle Talk call during a Circle Talk session.

Subscription

- To use Circle Talk, you must subscribe to Hot Status (page 18-3). Connection fees apply for using Circle Talk.

Circle Talk Session Window



① Person with floor control
[icon] ***Myself*** appears when you are talking. [icon] ***Press and Hold*** appears when the floor is available.

② [icon] indicates the person with floor control.

③ Session members
If the member is saved to Phone Book, his/her name appears. Members not saved to Phone Book are identified by their phone number.

④ Check each member's status.

Requesting	Requesting participation
Join In	Connected
Sharing	Participating
Leaving	Quit
Not Available	Unavailable

Communications 18

Making a Circle Talk Call

1 In Standby, enter a phone number and press and hold [key]

Circle Talk connection is made.

- To make a Circle Talk call from the Circle Talk Members List (page 18-15), press [key] in Standby, select an entry, and then press [key] (CT).

2 Press and hold [key] to talk

Talk when ***Myself*** appears.

- Initiator can talk as soon as Circle Talk is connected.
- ***Myself*** disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.

3 To leave the Circle Talk session, press [POWER] → *YES* → [■]

- When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) from the Circle Talk Members List to perform the following (available functions vary by list):
  Add Members/Edit Group/Delete/Loud Speaker
- To add or delete members to whom you are making a Circle Talk call at the same time, perform the following (put check mark(s) to select up to ten members):
  - Enter a phone number in Standby → [Y!] (Menu) → ***Circle Talk*** → [Y!] (Menu) → ***Add***
  - Select a member from the Circle Talk Members List → [■] (OK) → [Y!] (Menu) → ***Add***
  - Select a group from the Circle Talk Members List → [Y!] (Menu) → ***Add/Delete***
- Circle Talk Members List can be accessed from:
  Main menu → ***Communications*** → ***Circle Talk***
- Alternatively, initiate a Circle Talk call from:
  - Call Log
  - Phone Book
  - Active Window
  - Hot Status Members List
- If you select ***Join CT*** by pressing [Y!] (Menu) from the dialed Circle Talk call log (page 2-7), you are re-connected to the Circle Talk session if it is still active. If the Circle Talk has been terminated, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Call CT*** to initiate a new Circle Talk session.

Answering a Circle Talk Call

1 Press ■ (Answer) when Circle Talk invitation arrives

Circle Talk connection is made.

- To reject the connection, press [Y!] (Reject).
- Alternatively, press [side key] to answer.

2 Press and hold [side key]

Talk when [icon] ***Myself*** appears.

- [icon] ***Myself*** disappears after 30 seconds and the floor is released.
- Only one person can talk at a time.

3 To leave the Circle Talk session, press [POWER]→*YES* →■

- When only one person remains, the session ends automatically.

Tip

- If your answer status for Circle Talk is set to ***Auto Join*** (page 18-7), you are automatically connected when you receive a Circle Talk call.
- If you select ***Join CT*** by pressing [Y!] (Menu) from the received Circle Talk call log (page 2-8), you are re-connected to the Circle Talk session if it is still active. If the Circle Talk has been terminated, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Call CT*** to initiate a new Circle Talk session.

Circle Talk Operations

Contacting Another Member

1 During a Circle Talk session, press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add* →■

To Contact a Person from a Circle Talk Members List

Select ***Members List***→■→Select a Members List entry→■

To Contact a Person from the Hot Status Members List

Select ***Hot Status***→■→Select a person→■

To Contact a Person from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select a person→■→Select a phone number→■

To Enter a Phone Number Directly

Select ***Direct Input***→■→Enter a phone number→■

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

1 Use [navigation key] during a session

Tip

- This adjusts the speaker volume when output is set for speaker.

Switching Sound Output

1 Press [✉] ([speaker on] / [speaker off]) during a session

Tip

- From a Circle Talk Members List, press [Y!] (Menu) and select ***Loud Speaker*** to switch sound output.

Circle Talk Members List

Creating a Circle Talk Members List

Save members to the Circle Talk Members List to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people.

Save up to 50 entries to Circle Talk Members List. Save people from Phone Book, Hot Status Members List or enter their phone number directly.

Adding an Entry

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Circle Talk

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add Members*→[■]

- If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press [✉] (Add) to display the Add Members window.

2 Select *Personal*→[■]→*Phone Book*/*Hot Status*/*Direct Input*→[■]

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).

3 Select a member or enter a phone number→[■]

Creating a Group

Organize entries by Group to initiate a Circle Talk call to a group of people. Save up to ten members to a group.

Main menu ▶ Communications ▶ Circle Talk

1 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add Members*→[■]

- If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press [✉] (Add) to display the Add Members window.

2 Select *Group*→[■]→*Create New*→[■]

3 Select *Empty*→[■]→*Phone Book*/*Hot Status*/*Direct Input*→[■]

- If you select ***Phone Book***, you can search Phone Book entries in the handset (not those in the USIM card or memory card).

4 Select a member or enter a phone number→[■]

- To save more members, repeat Steps 3 and 4.
- If you want to change a member's phone number, select the member, press [■] twice, and then enter the phone number.

5 Press [✉] (Add)→Enter a group name→[■]

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) in the Create New Group window to perform the following (some items are not displayed depending on the selected member):
  Delete*/*Delete All

Adding a Hot Status Members List Group

Add an entire group from the Hot Status Members List (page 18-5) as a Circle Talk Members List group.

Main menu ▶ **Communications** ▶ **Circle Talk**

1 **Press [Menu key] (Menu)→*Add Members*→[Center key]**

- If not even one member is saved to the Circle Talk Members List, press [Mail key] (Add) to display the Add Members window.

2 **Select *Group*→[Center key]→*Hot Status*→[Center key]**

3 **Select a group→[Center key]**

Tip

- Hot Status members in ***No Group*** cannot be added using this procedure.

Editing a Group Name

1 **In Standby, press [Side key]→Select a Circle Talk Members List group→[Menu key] (Menu)**

2 **Select *Edit Group*→[Center key]→*Rename*→[Center key]**

3 **Edit a group name→[Center key]**

Editing Group Member Information

Add or delete group members, or change a group member's phone number.

1 **In Standby, press [Side key]→Select a Circle Talk Members List group→[Menu key] (Menu)**

2 **Select *Edit Group*→[Center key]→*Change Member*→[Center key]**

To Add Members

Select ***Empty***→[Center key]→***Phone Book/Hot Status/Direct Input***→[Center key]→Select a member or enter a phone number→[Center key]

To Delete a Member

Select a member you want to delete→[Menu key] (Menu)→***Delete***→[Center key]→***YES***→[Center key]

To Delete All Members

Press [Menu key] (Menu)→***Delete All***→[Center key]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[Center key]

To Change a Member's Phone Number

Select a member whose phone number you want to change→[Center key] (twice)→Enter a phone number→[Center key]

3 **Press [Mail key] (Save)**

Deleting Entries from Circle Talk Members List

1 **In Standby, press [key]**

To Delete One Entry

Select an entry→[key] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***One***→[■]→***YES***→[■]

To Select Multiple Entries to Delete

Press [key] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***Select Multi***→[■]→Select some entries→[■]→[key] (Delete)→***YES***→[■]

To Delete All Entries

Press [key] (Menu)→***Delete***→[■]→***All***→[■]→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→***YES***→[■]

Tip

- Circle Talk Members List can be accessed from: Main menu→***Communications***→***Circle Talk***

19 S! GPS Navi

Using S! GPS Navi

About S! GPS Navi

S! GPS Navi uses location information by GPS satellite and by communication with base stations. View on the map where you are, and send your location information to compatible SoftBank handsets. Also retrieve information about your current location, and check the route to your destination. The navigation application is preinstalled in your handset. For details, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Note

- When signal reception of the GPS satellite is poor, your position can be determined by the base station information. However, depending on the base station's location or signal strength, the margin of error could vary from hundreds of meters to several kilometers in radius.
- When you cannot confirm the right location, move to a place where you can see the sky.
- Note that SoftBank accepts no liability whatsoever for any damages arising from use of the location information provided.
- You cannot confirm the location during the time of Positioning Lock (page 19-5).

Starting a Navigation Application

Use a navigation application to retrieve information about your current location or check the route to your destination.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 Select *Navi Appli*→ ■

Tip

- End all paused S! Appli before activating a navigation application.

Checking Your Current Position

Display the current location by starting the Navi Application.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 Select *Locate Me*→ ■

- A confirmation window is displayed as to whether to send out the location information. If you select ***Ask Once Only***, there is no confirmation window showing up next time.

Note

- When the sending location setting (page 19-6) is set to ***Do not Send,*** the current position cannot be checked. Set to ***Always Ask*** or ***Send***.

Tip

- Positioning accuracy is indicated in three levels. Level 3 is the most accurate. If accuracy is level 1, it is recommended that you move to a new location and try again.

Sending Current Position by S! Mail

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ S! GPS Navi

1 **Select *Location Mail*→■**

When your current position is obtained, the Create Message window appears and the information is automatically inserted in the S! Mail text field.

Using Location Logs

Check location logs for up to the last 20 retrieved location information items. If "🛰" is shown to the left of location history, it means the right location was successfully confirmed; "🛰" means a failure.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ S! GPS Navi

1 **Select *Location Logs*→■→Select a log→Y! (Menu)**

Checking the Map from Location Information

Select *Open Map*→■→*Send*/*Ask Once Only*→■→Start the navigation application and display the map

- If you select *Ask Once Only*, a confirmation window won't be displayed from the next time.

Starting the Navigation Application

Select *Go to*→■→Start the navigation application

Sending the Location Information by S! Mail

Select *Location Mail*→■

Saving the Location Information to My Locations

Select *To Locations*→■

Saving Location Information to a Phone Book Entry

Select *To Phone Book*→■

Deleting One Log

Select *Delete*→■→*Delete*→■→*YES*→■

Deleting All Logs

Select *Delete*→■→*Delete All*→■→Enter your security code (page 1-25)→*YES*→■

Displaying the Log Details

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ S! GPS Navi

1 **Select *Location Logs*→■→Select a log→■**

Tip

- When there are 20 location logs, the oldest log is deleted each time a new log is created.
- The location log is not saved to memory if positioning is stopped partway through.

Saving Location Information to My Locations

Retrieve location information and save it to My Locations.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 Select *My Locations*→■→Select an unregistered item→■

2 Save the location information→■→Enter a title→■

Tip

- When the location information is saved, select ***My Locations*** and press Y! (Menu) to perform the following:
  Open Map*/*Go to*/*Location Mail*/*To Phone Book*/*Update*/*Delete*/*Edit Title

Navi Settings

Saving a Map URL

Set the map provider to show a map on the Internet.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 Select *NAVI Settings*→■→*Map URL Settings*→■

Saving a Map URL

Select an unregistered item→Y! (Menu)→***Edit URL***→■→Enter a URL →■

Editing the Name of Map URL

Select a map URL→Y! (Menu)→***Rename***→■→Edit the name→■

Editing the Map URL

Select a map URL→Y! (Menu)→***Edit URL***→■→***YES***→■→Edit the URL→■

Setting a Map URL

Select a map URL→■

Deleting a Map URL

Select a map URL→Y! (Menu) →***Delete***→■→***YES***→■

Note

- The preset map URL cannot be edited or deleted.

Selecting the Navigation Application

Select a navigation application.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 **Select *NAVI Settings*→■→*Set Navi Appli*→■**

2 **Select a navigation application→■**

Note

- When application becomes unavailable due to USIM replacement, reset handset (Reset All) or clear entries/files (Clear Memory) (page 12-7).

Positioning Lock

Disable positioning.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 **Select *NAVI Settings*→■→*Positioning Lock*→■**

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

3 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→■**

Location Navi

Locate other people or locate the approximate location of your own handset* if you have lost it.

* Service expected to be available from August 2007.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 **Select *Location Navi*→■**

- Follow the onscreen instructions

Note

- To use Location Navi, the person requesting location information must join the service.
- Before receiving a request for location information, you need to sign up on Yahoo! Keitai the people you allow to request location information (people you inform of your location).
- Location Navi is not effective in areas that are out of signal range.
- You need to apply and do the settings in advance so that you can use a PC to search for a lost or stolen handset.

Location Information Send Settings

Set whether location information is sent automatically when a location information request is received while you are obtaining information.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **S! GPS Navi**

1 **Select** ***NAVI Settings***→■→***LocationProperty***→■→▢→■

2 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

Displaying a Confirmation Window Every Time

Select ***Always Ask***→■

Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select ***Send***→■

Not Sending the Location Information without Having a Confirmation Window Displayed

Select ***Do not Send***→■

20 Entertainment

S! Cast (Japanese Only)

Subscribe to contents and receive automatic updates. Content updates are received during the night. When updates are received, Information Prompt (page 1-11) appears and the following indicators appear:

- Downloading content
- New S! Cast content
- Download failed

● A monthly subscription fee is required to use this service. No additional fees are required for receiving content.

Subscribing/Canceling Subscription

Connect your handset to a special site to register or cancel transmission information and select programs.

● Communication fees apply while you are connected to the Web.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 Select *Reg./Cancel*→■→*YES*→■

● Follow the onscreen instructions.

Checking Content Updates

Confirm the latest information.

The ***What's new?*** icon shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be " " when it has not been read; " " when it has been read.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 Select *What's new?*→■

Tip

- While ***What's new?*** is selected, press Y! (Menu) and select ***Delete*** to delete the latest information.
- Lower portion of window may be blank, depending on the content.

Checking Content from Information Prompt

The latest information can be browsed from Information Prompt (page 1-11).

1 When Information Prompt appears, select *New S! Cast*→■

Tip

- While browsing information, press Y! (Menu) to perform the following: ***Forward/Text Copy/Saving Mode/Tool/Yahoo! Keitai/Settings***

Entertainment

20

Downloading Content Manually

When an update cannot be received because your handset is turned off or the signal is weak, manually download the update. Only updates for that day can be downloaded.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select *Get Latest*→■→*YES*→■**

● A connection is established to the redelivery page.

Note

- Content cannot be downloaded on non-delivery days.

Requesting Redelivery from Information Prompt

Establish a connection to the re-delivery page from Information Prompt (page 1-11).

1 **When Information Prompt appears, select *S! Cast Info*→■**

2 **Select *YES*→■**

Checking History

Past updates are saved to History.

The icon ***History*** shown on the menu display of S! Cast will be " " when there is some information that has not been read; " " when all has been read.

Up to seven items are saved to History. The oldest item is deleted automatically.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select *History*→■**

2 **Select a content→■**

Tip

- While History is selected, press (Menu) and select ***Delete*** to delete the old information.
- Icons for information in the past that are shown in the history list display appear as " " when some information has not been read; " " when all has been read.
- Up to 3 MB of content including the latest item can be saved. When either the maximum number of content items or the maximum content size is reached, the oldest item is deleted each time there is a new item.
- You cannot reorganize the list.

Weather Indicator

Weather Indicator shows the weather forecast for the current local area with indicators in Standby. Weather Indicator is updated automatically.

● A separate subscription is required to use Weather Indicator.

Setting Weather Indicator

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select** ***Weather***→■→***View Settings***→■

2 **Select** ***Indicator***→■→***Show/Hide***→■

When You Select *Show*

Select ***YES***→■

Setting Information Prompt for Weather Indicator

Set to display Weather Indicator from Information Prompt (page 1-11).

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select** ***Weather***→■→***View Settings***→■→***Prompt***→■

2 **Select** ***Show/Hide***→■

Tip

● Use the Weather Indicator only as a guide.

Checking Weather Forecast

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select** ***Weather***→■→***Weather***→■

● When there is an unread forecast update, "●" appears.

Tip

● You can view the weather forecast by selecting Weather Indicator and pressing ■ in Active Window.

Updating Weather Forecast

Obtain the latest information manually when a Weather Indicator cannot be updated automatically.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment** ▶ **S! Cast**

1 **Select** ***Weather***→■→***Update***→■→***YES***→■

Reading Electronic Books (Japanese Only)

BookSurfing and ***e-Book Viewer*** are viewers to view electronic comic books, electronic photo albums, electronic publications (novels, etc.), and other electronic books.

You can enlarge or reduce images, scroll the window with simple operations, and use sound, vibration, and other effects to enhance your reading experience.

● Some electronic books may require a content key for viewing.

Viewer	Supported Formats
BookSurfing	CCF (.CCF)
e-Book Viewer	XMDF (.ZBK, .ZBF, .ZBS)

* Titles of unsupported file formats are not displayed.

* The viewer that starts up depends upon the file format. For information about checking the file format, see page 9-7.

* ***e-Book Viewer*** may not be able to display some PC contents.

Main menu ▶ **Entertainment**

Using BookSurfing

Select ***BookSurfing***→■

Using e-Book Viewer

Select ***e-Book Viewer***→■

● For the following operations, see ***BookSurfing*** or ***e-Book Viewer*** help.

Tip

- Electronic books can be viewed by directly selecting a title from the ***Books*** folder. The appropriate viewer will start up in accordance with the file format of the electronic book selected.
- Alternatively, access BookSurfing or e-Book Viewer from S! Appli Library: Main menu→***S! Appli***→***Library***→Select *ブックサーフィン* (BookSurfing) or *ケータイ書籍* (e-Book Viewer)
  However, you may only access files supported by the respective viewers.

Ku-man's Room (Japanese Only)

"Ku-man" is a foot-loose and fancy free baby star bear. Visit Ku-man's room to change his outfit or receive messages from him.

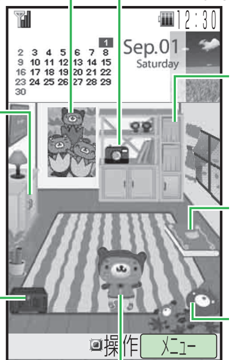
Note

- You cannot visit Ku-man's room if the language setting is set to ***English***. Set the language to *日本語* (Japanese).

About Ku-man's Room

Poster
Change the poster.

Photos
Take a picture of Ku-man.



Cupboard
This is where Ku-man keeps his trophies.

Change clothes
Ku-man's clothes are here.

Photo album
Ku-man keeps all his photos here.

Treasure chest
Ku-man keeps all his important things here.

Change!
Ku-man changes his outfit to appear in Standby.

Ku-man
I am "Ku-man" the foot-loose and fancy free star bear. Sometimes I like to travel around.

Tip

- Check Ku-man's secrets at the website Toshiba User Club Site (page 20-7).

Opening Ku-man's Room

Main menu ▶ **エンタテイメント (Entertainment)**

1 **Select *くーまんの部屋* (Ku-man's Room)→ ■**

- When the confirmation window asking whether to open the room appears, select *起動する* (Open).
- When the Idle Screen (page 11-10) setting confirmation window appears, select ***YES*** or ***NO***.

Tip

- Press [Y!] (*メニュー* (Menu)) in Ku-man's room to perform the following:
 模様がえ (Redecorate): Redecorate Ku-man's room. Select the room from *お部屋データ* (Room Data) in Ku-man Data.
 くーまんメール (Ku-man Mail): Check messages from Ku-man (page 20-8).
 くーまんデータ (Ku-man Data): Display or delete files from Ku-man Data or attach files to messages.
 マイデータ登録 (My Info.): Set your name and Ku-man will remember it. Also set your birthday or anniversaries and Ku-man will celebrate with you.
 UserClubSite: Download items for playing with Ku-man from the website Toshiba User Club Site. For information about connecting, see the Toshiba User Club Site guide.
 ヘルプ (Help): Find out about the operations in Ku-man's room.
 メモリ容量確認 (Memory Status): Check the amount of memory used in Ku-man Data.
 くーまんOFF (Ku-man OFF): Turn off the Ku-man functions (Ku-man Mail, Idle Screen, Ku-man's Room).
- You can only download items for playing with Ku-man when ***UserClubSite*** (above) is selected.

Tip

- If Ku-man items become full, select the photos in the album that you want to keep, press [Y!] (*メニュー* (Menu)) and copy them to Data Folder or to the memory card before erasing the items from Ku-man Data.
- Ku-man sometimes goes off on journeys. You cannot meet him while he is on a trip, but he can send you mail. He will come back after a while, so visit his room from time to time to see if he is home.

Playing with Ku-man

Look in Ku-man's Treasure Chest, change the outfit of Ku-man in Standby (page 11-10) or take photos.

Example: Changing the outfit of Ku-man in Standby

1 In Ku-man's Room, press [●]

Now you can operate Ku-man's Room.

2 Press [✉] (*前へ* (Previous))/[Y!] (*次へ* (Next)) to select *へんし〜ん!* (Change!)→[●]

3 Select an outfit→[●]

● Ku-man in his room wears the clothes from before the change.

Entertainment

20

Tip

- If you select *たからばこ* (Treasure Chest), you can see Ku-man's treasures. Select a treasure, and press [Y!] (*メニュー* (Menu)) and select *メール送信* (Send Mail) to attach the treasure to a message. The treasure disappears from the Treasure Chest when it is attached to a message.
- Select *きがえ* (Change Clothes) to change Ku-man's clothes. Ku-man has different clothes for day wear and evening wear, so he only wears new clothes for that part of the day (day or evening).
  For example, if Ku-man changes to clothes B during the day, then he can only wear clothes B during the day. For the evening he changes to clothes C. Then, if he changes from clothes C to clothes D during the night, the next day he wears clothes B during the day and clothes D for the evening.

Example	Day	Night
Clothes on a day	Wears clothes A	Wears clothes C
Change to clothes B while wearing clothes A during the day.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes C
Then, change to clothes D while wearing clothes C during the night.	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D
On the next day...	Wears clothes B	Wears clothes D

  Ku-man also changes clothes for the different seasons.

Checking Messages from Ku-man

Ku-man sends mail after you open his room for the first time, when he goes on trips and other times. Sometimes there are presents attached to messages from Ku-man.

1 In Ku-man's Room, press [Y!] (*メニュー* (Menu))→ *くーまんメール* (Ku-man Mail)→ [●]

2 Select a message→ [●]

Tip

- To stop Ku-man from sending you mail, press [Y!] (*メニュー* (Menu)) and select *くーまんOFF* (Ku-man OFF) in Ku-man's Room.
- Check, save and delete messages from Ku-man in the same way as in the Message Box (page 15-12).
- Ku-man Mail uses the same memory as Received (page 15-12) in Message Box. If you delete all the received messages, or if you set Auto-delete (page 15-15) to the default ***Set*** and the folder becomes full, messages from Ku-man are also deleted.
- You can save the attached data to Data Folder or to Ku-man Data.
- Ku-man Mail is mock mail that does not go through the service center. No communication charge is applied.
- You can also check Ku-man Mail as follows:
  Main menu → ***Messaging*** → ***Message Box*** → ***Received***

21 S! FeliCa

About S! FeliCa

S! FeliCa is a service used by cell phones with contactless IC card technology built in. The mark on the back of the handset can be held up to a reader/ writer for such tasks as shopping with e-money, using a member's card or a point card. S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that S! FeliCa cannot be used while the battery pack is removed.

- For more information about S! FeliCa, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Getting Started

■FeliCa

FeliCa is contactless IC card technology that makes it possible to read data when an IC card is held up to a reader/writer.

■IC card

The term "IC card" means an IC chip built in an S! FeliCa compatible terminal.

■Lifestyle-Appli

This is an S! Appli for using S! FeliCa.

- Your handset comes with a preinstalled e-money Lifestyle-Appli called "***Edy***".
  "***Edy***" is the brand name of a prepaid e-money service managed by bitWallet, Inc.

Precautions When Using S! FeliCa

- The data on the IC card can be misused if your S! FeliCa compatible handset is lost or stolen. Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any losses suffered by you if this happens.
- Before deciding whether to use an S! FeliCa service, be sure to contact the service provider about the terms, conditions, and other rules governing its use.
- Connection charges may be incurred when downloading a Lifestyle-Appli or when using a Lifestyle-Appli that requires network connection.
- Do not remove the stickers from the back of the battery cover or from the handset in the area around the battery pack, and do not remove the battery cover. Doing so may make it impossible to use S! FeliCa.
- Certain types of service and usage conditions may cause data to be stored on the IC card. The procedure for deleting such data from the IC card depends on the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.

Using S! FeliCa

In order to use a Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an S! FeliCa service and configure a number of settings. Before using e-money, you need to make a deposit into your account.

S! FeliCa Flow

Downloading a Lifestyle-Appli

Main menu ▶ Data Folder ▶ Lifestyle-Appli ▶ Download

Download the Lifestyle-Appli from an Internet website

- The Lifestyle-Appli is stored in the ***Lifestyle-Appli*** folder.

Subscribing to an S! FeliCa Service and Configuring Settings

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Lifestyle

Select the Lifestyle-Appli you want to subscribe to or configure→■

- Subscribe to the S! FeliCa service (hereinafter referred to as "service") and configure the required settings.
- Subscription and setting details depend on the Lifestyle-Appli. Follow the onscreen instructions.

Using an S! FeliCa Service

Note

- Details concerning Lifestyle-Appli applications and usage differ according to the Lifestyle-Appli. For details, contact the S! FeliCa service provider.
- Note that SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any loss or corruption of data or settings on the IC card due to malfunction or repair.
- Be sure to keep separate records of the security code, contact information, and other information for each service so you do not forget them.

Tip

- You cannot activate more than one Lifestyle-Appli at the same time.

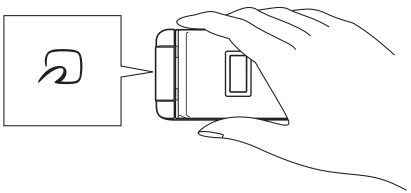
Using S! FeliCa

The e-money example below shows how to use a reader/writer to read IC card data.

- Before performing this procedure, you must subscribe to a service, configure its settings, and make a deposit in your e-money account.
- There is no need to activate Lifestyle-Appli to perform this procedure.
- S! FeliCa can be used even while the handset is turned off. Note, however, that a Lifestyle-Appli will not activate while the handset is turned off.

1 Hold the ⓕ mark up to the reader/writer

- Whenever there is difficulty being read, try moving the handset back and forth, left and right.



2 Check the reader/writer display to confirm that the read was performed

Note

- Data may not be read if there is a metal object or other obstruction between the ⓕ mark and the reader/writer.
- S! FeliCa cannot be used when battery power is low. Charge the battery pack to use S! FeliCa.

Adding a Lifestyle-Appli

In addition to the Lifestyle-Appli preinstalled in the handset, you also can download other Lifestyle-Appli from the Internet.

- Before using a downloaded Lifestyle-Appli, you first need to subscribe to an S! FeliCa service.

Main menu ▶ **Data Folder** ▶ **Lifestyle-Appli**

1 Select *Download*→■→*YES*→■→Select a Lifestyle-Appli

Note

- Downloading may not end normally if battery level is low.
- A downloaded Lifestyle-Appli cannot be used if you replace the USIM card.

Checking IC Card Information

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Lifestyle** ▶ **Card Settings**

1 Select *IC Card Status*→■

- You cannot check the contents of an IC card that is locked (page 21-5).

Disabling S! FeliCa

Your handset can be set to disable communication between the IC card and a reader/writer. " " appears in Standby while the IC card is locked.

Turning IC Card Lock On or Off

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Lifestyle** ▶ **Card Settings** ▶ **IC Card Lock**

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *ON/OFF*→[■]

Disabling S! FeliCa from a Remote Location

Disable S! FeliCa from a remote location by placing a call to the handset from another phone (Call Lock) or by sending an email message with a preset subject to the handset (Mail Lock).

Setting the Lock Phone Number

Register a phone number for performing Call Lock. You can have up to eight lock phone numbers registered at the same time.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Lifestyle** ▶ **Card Settings** ▶ **Remote Lock**

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *Call Lock*→[■]→*Phone Numbers*→[■]

3 Press [Y!] (Menu)→*Add*→[■]

Setting a Phone Number from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→[■]→Select the party→[■]→Select the phone number→[■] (twice)

Directly Entering a Phone Number

Select ***Phone Number***→[■]→Enter the phone number→[■] (twice)

Setting a Phone Number from the Call Log

Select ***Call Log***→[■]→Select the party→[■] (twice)

Specifying an Incoming Call from a Public Phone

Select ***Payphone***→[■]

Specifying an Incoming Call with No Caller ID

Select ***Withheld***→[■]

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) while a set lock phone number is selected to perform the following:
  Add/Edit/Delete

Setting the Number of Calls for Locking

Specify the number of incoming calls for locking the IC card.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Remote Lock

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Call Lock*→■→*Missed Count*→■**

3 **Input the number of calls→■**

Setting the Lock Password

Register a password (subject) for performing Mail Lock.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Remote Lock

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Mail Lock*→■→*Lock PW*→■**

3 **Input the lock password→■**

Setting a Lock Notification Address

Set an IC Card Lock notification address. You can have up to two lock notification addresses registered at the same time.

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Remote Lock

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Mail Lock*→■→*Address*→■**

3 **Press Y! (Menu)→*Add*→■**

Setting the Mail Lock Address

Select ***To Sender***→■

Setting an Address from Phone Book

Select ***Phone Book***→■→Select the party→■→Select the email address→■

Setting an Address from the Sent Log or Received Log

Select ***Sent Log/Received Log***→■→Select the party→■

Directly Inputting a Phone Number or Email Address

Select ***Phone Number/Email***→■→Input the phone number/email address→■ (twice)

4 **Press クリア/メモ**

5 **Select *Notification*→■→*Send/Do not Send*→■**

Tip

- Press [Y!] (Menu) while a set lock notification address is selected to perform the following:
  Add/Edit/Delete

Turning Mail Lock or Call Lock On or Off

Note that you cannot set to ***ON*** unless ***Lock PW*** (page 21-6) or ***Phone Numbers*** (page 21-5) is set.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Lifestyle** ▶ **Card Settings** ▶ **Remote Lock**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Mail Lock/Call Lock*→[■]**

3 **Select *ON/OFF*→[■]→*ON/OFF*→[■]**

Using Remote Lock to Lock the IC Card

Lock the IC card from a remote location.

- Before performing these procedures, first configure Mail Lock (page 21-6) or Call Lock (page 21-5) settings and set Remote Lock to ***ON*** (left).

Using Mail Lock to Lock the IC Card

1 **Create a message with a preset password for the subject, and send the message**

- Do not enter anything for any of the other fields of the message.
  IC Card Lock will turn on when the message is received.
  If there is a lock notification address (page 21-6) specified, a message will be sent to the address informing the recipient that IC Card Lock was turned on.

Note

- If the handset is unable to receive mail for some reason, IC Card Lock will not be turned on even if you send a Mail Lock message.

Releasing Remote Lock

Set IC Card Lock (page 21-5) to ***OFF*** to release Remote Lock.

Using Call Lock to Lock the IC Card

1 **Place a call to the handset from one of the preset phone numbers**

2 **Hang up the phone**

- Repeat the procedure until you reach the number of times you preset for Call Lock settings (page 21-6) within three minutes. Each of the calls must be unanswered.

Note

- The current incoming call count is cleared (becomes zero) whenever any one of the following occurs.
  - If a call is received from another preset phone number
  - If a call placed to the handset is answered
  - If the handset is turned off
  - If the number of incoming calls does not reach the preset number within three minutes
- If Call Lock is performed while a video call is in progress, IC Card Lock will turn on but there will be no message to tell that the IC card has been locked.
- Call Lock cannot be performed while a voice call is in progress and Call Waiting (page 14-6) is set to ***OFF***.

Tip

- When the number of calls reached to the preset number, a message informing that the IC card has been locked plays.

Configuring the External Startup Setting

Specify whether a function (browser, messaging, vibration, notification, S! Appli) should start up upon request from an obtained data when the handset is held up before a particular reader/writer.

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Lifestyle** ▶ **Card Settings** ▶ **Interface**

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select a function→■**

3 **Select *ON*/*OFF*→■**

Balance Display Settings

The remaining balance on the IC card is shown on the External Display by each Lifestyle-Appli listed on the Balance List.

Turning Balance Display On or Off

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Display Balance

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *ON/OFF*→[■]→*ON/OFF*→[■]

Adding a Lifestyle-Appli to Balance List

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Display Balance

1 Enter your security code (page 1-25)

2 Select *Balance List*→[■]→*Empty*→[■]

3 Select a Lifestyle-Appli→[■]

Tip

- A maximum of eight items can be saved to the Balance List.
- You can also add an item to the Balance List by the following procedure:
  Main menu→***Tools***→***Lifestyle***→***Lifestyle*** or Main menu→***Data Folder***→***Lifestyle-Appli***→Select a Lifestyle-Appli→[Y!] (Menu)→***Add to List***→Enter your security code (page 1-25)

Checking the Balance

1 Press and hold [side key] when your handset is closed

- The balance is shown by each Lifestyle-Appli saved on Balance List. Pressing [side key] switches the balance display to the next Lifestyle-Appli.

Tip

- Set Side Key (page 11-12) to ***Balance*** to display the balance.

Deleting an Entry from Balance List

Main menu ▶ Tools ▶ Lifestyle ▶ Card Settings ▶ Display Balance

1 **Enter your security code (page 1-25)**

2 **Select *Balance List*→ ■ →Select a Lifestyle-Appli**

Deleting One Item

Y! (Menu)→***Delete***→ ■ →***YES***→ ■

Deleting All Items

Y! (Menu) → ***Delete All*** → ■ → Enter your security code → ***YES*** → ■

22 Appendix

Default Settings

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
S! Appli	**Settings**	Screensaver: OFF, Start Time: 3 sec, Calls&Alarms (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Volume: Level 3, Backlight (Backlight: Same as Phone, Blink: ON), Vibration: ON	Chapter 17
Active Window	**Settings**	Templates: News, Auto Refresh (Flash News: Manual, News: Manual, S! Loop: Manual), Unread/Read: Show All, Screen Speed: Neutral	Page 13-5
Browser Settings		Font Size: Medium-Small (Yahoo! Keitai)/Extra-Small (PC Browser), Scroll Unit: 1 line, Downloads (Images: Download, Sounds: Download), Security (Manufacture #: Do not Send, Send Referer: Send, Cookie: Enable, Script: Ask Once (Yahoo! Keitai)/Enable (PC Browser), Authentica...: Per Session, Session Info.: Show), Storage: Phone Memory	Page 16-13
Camera	**Camera**	Picture Size (Mobile: W240×H400, Digital: W2048×H1536), Date Stamp: OFF, Date Stamp Color: White w/Black, Quality: Fine, Effects: OFF, Shutter Sound: Pattern 1, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Storage: Phone Memory, Icons Display: Show, File Name: Date&Time, Auto Save: OFF, Mode: Mobile, Self-view: OFF, Brush Up (Mobile: ON, Digital: OFF), Multi Shots: OFF, Add Frame: OFF, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV, Focus Mode: Auto, Picture Mode: OFF, Resist Shake: OFF, Grid: OFF	Chapter 7

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Camera (Continued)	**Video**	Quality (Video: Normal, Video Mail: Normal, Short Video: Economy (Fixed)), Effects: OFF, Start/End: Pattern 1, ScreenDisplay: Normal screen, Icons Display: Show, Preview: ON, File Name: Date&Time, Storage: Phone Memory, Auto Save: OFF, Flicker: Automatic, Key Shortcut: ON, Mode: Video Mail, Self-view: OFF, Voice Record: ON, Delay Timer: OFF, Mobile Light: OFF, White Balance: Auto, Color Control: Neutral, Exposure: ±0.0EV, Encode: MPEG4	Chapter 7
	Scan Data	Exposure: ±0.0EV	Page 7-17
Messaging	**Display**	Font Size: Medium-Small, Scroll Unit: Line, Show Address (Main Display: Show All, Ext. Display: Show All)	Page 15-22
	Creating	Simple Input: No Entry, Category: No Entry, Signature: No Signature, Default Type: SMS, Notify Type: Show	Page 15-22
	Sending	Confirmation: Show, Vibration: ON, DeliveryCheck: Do not Ask, Expiry (SMS: Not Specified, S! Mail: Not Specified), Priority: Normal, Delivery Time: Immediate, Reply to: OFF, Message Ctr: Number in the USIM card	Page 15-23
	Receiving	Retrieve Mode: Immediate, Auto-extract (Picture: Show, Sound: Mute), Anti-Spam (Sort Messages: Do not Sort, Select Folder: Folder 17)	Page 15-24
	3D Pictograms	Auto Play: OFF, Colors: Color 1	Page 15-25
	Received	Auto-delete: Set	Page 15-15
	Sent	Auto-delete: Set	

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Entertainment	**Weather**	View Settings (Indicator: Show, Prompt: Show)	Page 20-4
	Ku-man's Room	Ku-man Data: Thumbnail View, My Info. (Name: あのね、, Birthday: 01月01日, Anniversary: だいじな日, 01月01日)	Page 20-6
Tools	**Alarms**	Alarms: OFF, Alarm Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Image: Original, Repeat: Once, Snooze: OFF	Page 13-6
	Answering Machine	Setting: OFF, Set Duration: 18 sec	Page 13-8
	Notepad	—	Page 13-9
	Calculator	Set Tax Rate: 5%	Page 13-10
	Dictionary	—	Page 13-11
	Calendar	All View: Not Registered, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Calendar Lock: Unlock, First View: Monthly, Font Color: White w/Black	Page 13-11
	Tasks	All View: Not Completed, Alarm (Set Alarm: OFF, Duration: 60 sec, Tone: Pattern 1, Volume: Level 3, Vibration: OFF, Image: Original), Tasks Lock: Unlock	Page 13-20
	Doc Viewer	—	Page 9-9
	Time Table	Time Table: No Entry, Set Time: Unset	Page 13-23
	Kitchen Timer	10 sec	Page 13-25
	Voice Recorder	Select Storage: Phone Memory	Page 13-25
	Number Memo	—	Page 13-26
	World Clock	—	Page 13-27

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Tools (Continued)	**Edit Picture**	—	Page 7-25
	Idokoro Mail	Recipients List: No Entry, Areas List: No Entry	Page 13-35
	Photo Show	ON/OFF: OFF, Settings (Templates: Bubble, Image: Preset, Duration: 60 min)	Page 13-28
	Lifestyle (Card Settings)	IC Card Lock: OFF, Remote Lock (Mail Lock: OFF, Lock PW: No Entry, Notification: Send, Address: To Sender, Call Lock: OFF, Missed Count: 3 times, Phone Numbers: No Entry), Interface (Browser, Messaging, Vibration, Notification, S! Appli): ON, Display Balance: OFF, Balance List: No Entry	Chapter 21
	S! GPS Navi	Map URL Settings: NAVITIME (http://map.navitime.jp/), Set Navi Appli: NAVITIME, Positioning Lock: OFF, Location Property: Always Ask	Chapter 19
	Transfer All	—	Page 13-29
	Relocate	—	Page 13-32
	Update	—	Page 22-13
Data Folder		View Type: Thumbnail 3×3	Chapter 9
Media Player		Play Mode: All, Surround: OFF, Equalizer: Flat, Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Player Image: Original	Chapter 8
TV		Subtitles: ON, Switch Audio: Main, Brightness: Brightness 3, Set Channels: No Entry, Datacasting (Start Comm.: Ask Before, Go to Secured: Ask Before, Access Memory: Do not Ask, Send Location: Always Ask, Manufacture #: Do not Send, Storage: Phone Memory), Off-timer: OFF, File Storage: Phone Memory, Volume: VOL12, Output Settings: Speaker/Earphone, Image Quality: Normal	Chapter 6
Phone Book		My Details: Owner phone number only, Speed Dial: Unset, Select Storage: Phone Memory, Phone Book Lock: Unlock, Search Mode: List View, S! Addr. Book (Auto Sync: OFF, Sync Type: Synchronize)	Chapter 4

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Sounds	**Normal**	Ringtone Vol.: Level 3, Ringtone: Pattern 1, Duration: 5 sec, Feeling: ON, Vibration: OFF, Keypad Tone Volume: Level 1, Keypad Tone Type: Original 1, Sound Effects Tone Volume: Level 1, Sound Effects Tone Type: Original, Sound Vol.: Level 3, Earpiece Vol.: Level 5, Speaker Vol.: Level 5, Battery: ON	Chapter 11
	Manner Mode (Silent)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: Same as Normal mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal mode	
	Manner Mode (Alarms)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Alarms (Alarms: Same as Normal mode, Vibration: Same as Normal mode), Feeling: Same as Normal mode, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: Same as Normal mode	
	Manner Mode (Drive)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: OFF, Feeling: OFF, Sound Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON	
	Manner Mode (Original 1 to 3)	Ringtone Vol.: Silent, Vibration: Pattern 1, Feeling: ON, Effects: OFF, Battery: OFF, Answering Machine: ON	
Manner Mode		Silent	Page 11-2
Display	**Idle Screen**	Wallpaper: Preset (Picture), Others: 1-line Digit, Ext. Display: Normal	Chapter 11, Pages 1-23, 1-24
	Main Screens	Deco (Icons): Original, Deco (Windows): Original, In-Calls: Original, Messages: Original, Download: Original, Power On: Original, Power Off: Original	
	Mini Tool	Mini Tool: Preset	
	Caller Details	Picture: ON, Ext. Display: ON	
	Wide View	IdleScreen: ON, Create Msg: ON, Msg Window: ON, Msg Lists: ON	

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Display (Continued)	**Font Settings**	Font Size (General: Medium, Messaging: Medium-Small, Mobile Web: Medium-Small, PC Browser: Extra-Small, Text Entry: Medium-Small), Font Color: Pattern 1	Chapter 11
	Backlight	Power Saving: 15 sec, Keypad Light: 5 sec, Displays (Lighting Time: 5 sec, Brightness: Brightness 3), Media Player: Always ON	
	External Light	Notification (Missed Call: Garnet, Messages: Emerald, DeliveryCheck: Sapphire, Missed Call: Amethyst, Missed CT: Blue Topaz, Hot Status: Citrine), Incoming (Voice Call: Garnet, Video Call: Emerald, Message (Color: Sapphire, Feeling: ON), DeliveryCheck: Amethyst, Missed Call: Citrine, Circle Talk: Blue Topaz, Hot Status: Citrine)	
Phone Settings	**Clock**	12hour/24hour: 24 hour, World Clock (City 1: Tokyo, City 2: Tokyo, Set as Main City: City 1, DST ON/OFF: OFF)	Pages 11-9,13-27, 13-28
	Sub Menu View	Show	Page 11-12
	言語選択	日本語	Page 11-11
	Navigation Keys	: Active Window, : Phone Book, : Dialed Numbers, : Received Calls	Page 11-12
	Side Key	Torch (penlight)	Page 11-12

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Security	**PIN Settings**	—	Page 12-2
	Change PIN	—	
	Change PIN2	—	
	Change Password	9999	
	Password Lock	Phone Closed: OFF, Power Saving: OFF, Power Off: OFF	Page 12-3
	Function Lock	Phone Book: Unlock, Calendar: Unlock, Tasks: Unlock, Call Log: Unlock, Message Log: Unlock	Page 12-4
	Secret Mode	Hide	Page 12-5
	Restricted Mode	Web: OFF	Page 12-8
	IP Service	ON	Page 12-5
Call Settings	**Call Services**	Intl. Calls (Intl. Code: 0046010)	Page 13-33
	Call Time&Cost	Last Call Time: 000:00:00, Total Call Time: 000:00:00, Last Call Cost: ---YEN, Total Call Cost: —, Cost Unit (Unit: —, Rate: —), Cost Display: OFF, Cost Limit: —	Pages 2-9, 2-10
	Earphone	Auto Answer: OFF, Earphone Call (Earphone Call: OFF, Set Number: Not Registered)	Page 13-39
	Answer Type	Open to Talk: OFF, Any Keys: OFF	Page 11-13
	Video Call	Alt. Picture: OFF, Image Quality: Standard, Hold Setting (Hold on Call: Preset, Hold Answer: Preset), Mute: OFF, Loud Speaker: ON, Auto Answer (Auto Answer: OFF, Answer List: Unset), Self-view: OFF	Chapter 5

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Call Settings (Continued)	**Reject Calls**	Specific #s (Specific #s: OFF, Reject List: No Entry), Unknown: OFF, Withheld: OFF, Payphone: OFF, Unavailable: OFF	Page 11-13
	Offline Mode	OFF	Page 2-12
	Show My Number	OFF	Page 11-14
	External Device	Empty	Page 11-15
Connectivity	**Bluetooth®**	ON/OFF: OFF, Paired Device (Paired Device: Unset, Trust Device: OFF), Settings (Visibility: Show, Set Handsfree: Handsfree)	Page 10-5
	Infrared	ON/OFF: OFF	Page 10-3
	USB	Connection: Always Ask, Battery: ON	Page 10-13
Idle Screen (Ku-man)		OFF	Page 11-10
Priority		Mid-operation (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Video (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), Media Player: Pause, Voice Recorder (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue), S! Appli (Voice Call: Pause Apps, Video Call: Pause Apps, Message: Continue Apps, Alarm: Pause Apps), Circle Talk: Continue, TV (Message: Pause, DeliveryCheck: Continue, Alarm: Pause)	Page 11-15
Memory	**Memory Status**	—	Page 11-15
	Format Card	—	Page 9-19

Function Name		Default Setting	Page
Call Services	**Call Forward**	—	Page 14-3
	Voice Mail	—	Page 14-5
	Call Waiting	—	Page 14-6
	Multiparty Call	—	Page 14-7
	Call Barring	—	Page 14-8
Call Log	**Dialed Number**	—	Pages 2-7, 2-8
	Received Call	—	
	Dialed Circle Talk	—	
	Received Circle Talk	—	
Text Entry		Predict Text: ON, Input Method: Standard, Font Size: Medium-Small, Clipboard: Unset, Clear Setting: Delete	Chapter 3
Shortcuts		Create Message, Message Box, Main Menu, Media Player, Calendar, Time Table, JPN Dictionary, ENG-JPN Dictionary, JPN-ENG Dictionary, Calculator, IC Card Lock	Page 13-34
Press and hold [HOLD]*	**Hold**	Unset	Page 12-6
Press and hold [#]	**Manner Mode**	Unset	Page 2-11

* This operation is for when your handset is closed.

Appendix

22

Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot turn the power on.	• Is the battery pack inserted properly (page 1-16)? • Is the battery charged (page 1-14)?
Displays *Please check connection with your charger.* and cannot charge the battery.	• Is there dust on the connections and contacts of the AC charger, External Device Port or battery pack? Clean the connections and contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.
Cannot operate the handset normally after turning it on.	• Does the PIN Entry window appear? ***PIN Settings*** (page 12-2) is set to ***ON***. Enter your PIN1 code. • Does the " " indicator or ***Password Lock*** appear on the display? The password lock (page 12-3) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-25). • Does ***USIM not inserted. Power off the phone and insert USIM.*** appear on the display? The USIM card was not read properly. Turn the power off and make sure the USIM card is inserted properly (page 1-4).
Cannot establish a connection for voice and video calls or use mail and Web functions.	• Does the " Out " indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. • Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-7) of your handset? • Does the " " indicator or ***Offline Mode*** appear on the display? Cancel offline mode (page 2-12).
Cannot make voice and video calls.	• Did you dial the whole phone number starting from the area code? • Does ***Network busy.*** appear on the display? • Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?

Problem	Possible Causes and Remedies
Cannot receive voice and video calls.	• Is Reject Calls (page 11-13) set? • Is Call Forward (page 14-3) or Voice Mail (page 14-5) set to ***All Calls***? • Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?
Cannot send messages.	• Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?
Cannot receive messages.	• Is Call Barring (page 14-8) set?
Calls are interrupted or disconnected.	• Does the " " indicator appear on the display? Are you out of the service area or in a location where a signal cannot reach your handset? Move to a location where a signal can reach your handset. • Is your hand or another object covering the internal antenna part (page 1-7) of your handset?
The handset does not respond to key presses.	• Does the " " indicator or ***Password Lock*** appear on the display? The phone lock (page 12-3) is activated. Enter your security code (page 1-25). • Was your handset closed and the " " indicator displayed on the External Display? The hold is activated (page 12-6). Press and hold HOLD while your handset is closed.
Cannot use FeliCa.	• Is " " displayed? Turn off IC Card Lock (page 21-5).

Software Update

Check if software on the handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network.

- No communication charge applies to update software.
- There are two ways to update software: ***Update now*** and ***Schedule update***.
  Update now: Update software now.
  Schedule update: Set a date and time to update software so that software is updated automatically at the time you have specified.
- Software updates may take a long time.
- Update software when the battery is fully charged. Do not remove the battery pack while updating.
- Please update software in a place where the handset has a good reception, and do not change locations while updating.
- You cannot use other functions during updates. If a program is running, software update is not available.
- You can update software without deleting Phone Book entries, images and sounds saved in the handset. However, data may be lost or damaged if the handset is not in good condition (broken, damaged, wet, etc.). We recommend that you make backups of your important data.

Note

- If the software update fails, you may not be able to operate your handset. In this case, contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Updating Software

Main menu ▶ **Tools** ▶ **Update**

1 Select *YES*→■

2 Select *Agree*→■ (twice)→Enter your center access code (page 1-25)→■→✉ (OK)

The check result is displayed.

Updating Software Immediately

Select ***Update now***→■→Press ■ when the download is completed

A message appears to indicate that the download is completed.

- When software is updated, the handset restarts automatically. After restarting, a confirmation window appears showing update information.

Selecting the Date and Time to Update Software

Select ***Schedule update***→■→✉ (YES)→Select a date→■→Select time→■ (twice)

- If a date or time you want to specify is not on the screen, select ***Next Time Slot*** or ***Next Week***.
- A confirmation window for software updates appears on the scheduled time. Press ■ or leave the handset for about 10 seconds to start automatic software updates.

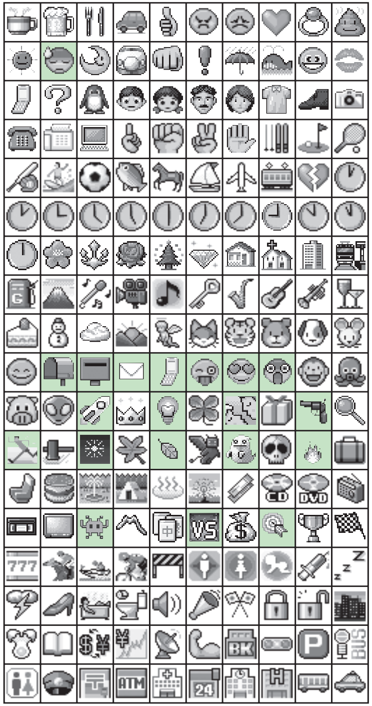
Note

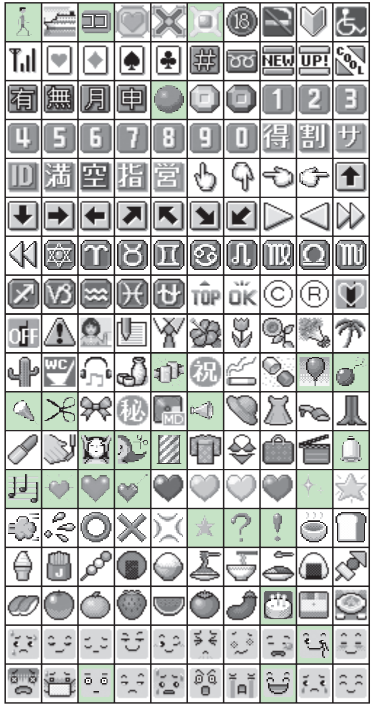
- If you are using another function on the handset on the scheduled time, software is not updated.
- If the handset indicates that it is out of the service area on the scheduled time, software is not updated.

Tip

- To cancel the reservation for updating software, perform the following: Main menu → ***Tools*** → ***Update*** → ***YES*** → ***Agree*** → ■ (Input) → Enter your center access code (page 1-25) → ✉ (OK) → ✉ (YES) → ***Cancel schedule*** → ✉ (YES)

Pictograph List







- Pictographs in ☐ are animated.
- Pictographs do not appear in email or on incompatible SoftBank handsets.

Arrange-picture List

Following images are preinstalled. Insert images in S! Mail text messages (page 15-7).

キラキラライン	
星空	
おめでとう	
ありがとう	
ごめんね	
好き	
ぷんぷん	
つかれた	

やったー！	
がんばれ！	
OK	
びっくり	
くーまんライン1	
くーまんライン2	
くーまんダンス	

Storage Capacity

Data Folder

Data Folder	Up to 58 MB*

* Data Folder shares its memory with S! Appli Library. The above figure is the amount of memory available when all data is deleted from Data Folder.

Mail

Received	Up to 5 MB Up to 2,000 messages
Sent, Unsent	Up to 1.5 MB Up to 600 messages
Drafts	Up to 700 KB Up to 60 messages

Internet

Bookmarks	Up to 50 bookmarks
History (URL)	Up to 10 URLs

Melody List

The preinstalled melodies are shown below.

Title	Composer
O mio babbino caro	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Habanera	BIZET GEORGES
Jupiter	HOLST GUSTAV
Arabesque No.1	DEBUSSY CLAUDE ACHILL
Turandot	PUCCINI GIACOMO
Someday My Prince Will Come	CHURCHILL FRANK E
Entertainer	JOPLIN SCOTT
Aloha Oe	Hawaiian ballad
Old Phone	Produced by Toshiba
Flash News	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 1	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 2	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 3	Produced by Toshiba
Electronic Sound 4	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 1	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 2	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 3	Produced by Toshiba
Voice 4	Produced by Toshiba
Alarm Clock	Produced by Toshiba
Pigeon	Produced by Toshiba

The fixed melodies cannot be set for the sound effect (page 11-5) as the keypad tone.

Main Specifications

Frequency Range	1920 - 2170 MHz
Continuous Talk Time	Approx. 160 min. (Video call: Approx. 60 min.)
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 350 hrs
Charging Time	Approx. 120 min.
Dimensions when closed (W×H×D)	Approx. 50 × 104 × 17 mm
Maximum Output	0.25 W
Weight	Approx. 136 g (with battery pack)

- The values above were calculated with the battery pack attached.
- The continuous talk time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is in a stationary state and a new fully charged battery pack is attached.
- The continuous standby time refers to the average length of time a signal can be received normally when the handset is closed with the External Display facing outward, the handset is in a stationary state, a new fully charged battery pack is attached and there are no calls made/received or operations performed. If the handset is in a location outside the service area or where it is difficult to receive a signal (in a building, vehicle, bag, etc.), this time may be reduced to half or less.
  This time may also be affected by other factors such as the operating environment (battery state, temperature, etc.).
- The operating time of the battery was calculated when a stable signal was received constantly. However, this time may be reduced to half or less if the handset is used in a location where the signal is weak or the handset is left in standby mode when it is outside the service area.
  Repeated charging and discharging a battery shortens the operating time.
  If the operating time becomes too short, purchase a new battery pack.
- If the Mobile Light is used frequently for taking pictures and recording videos or as a flashlight, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- When an S! Appli is activated, the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become significantly shorter.
- If the handset is used with Display illuminated frequently (for Yahoo! Keitai use, etc.), the continuous talk time and continuous standby time become shorter.
- Note that the LCD Display may have defective pixels (dead or stuck pixels).

AC Charger

Input Voltage : 100 to 240 V AC
: 50/60 Hz

Charging Temperature Range : 5 to 35°C

Glossary

Term	Definition
3G	A third generation (3G) mobile communication system.
USIM Card	Use the handset with this card inserted. The card stores subscriber information such as your phone number and handset data. You can also save Contacts list entries and other data to the card. When you replace your handset, use of the same USIM card in the new handset enables you to continue using the data stored on the card.
USIM PIN	A number required for using the USIM card with your handset. This number allows you to prevent others from using your handset in the event that your handset is lost or stolen.
S! Mail	A service that allows long text messages with picture, video and melody attachments to be exchanged.
SMS	A service that allows short text messages to be exchanged between handsets.
SSL	A communication method for transmitting data in an encrypted form over the Internet. It enables data such as information related to privacy and credit card numbers to be sent and received safely and protects against dangers on the Internet such as eavesdropping, tampering and spoofing. SSL communication uses server certificates.
Server Certificate	A digital certificate for identifying that a site on a server is trustworthy. The server certificate includes information necessary for SSL communication (encrypted communication), server information and a digital signature of a Certificate Authority to verify that the server is authentic.
Cache	The location in the handset for temporarily storing the data of displayed Web pages, etc.
S! Appli	Applications including games and 3D images that can be downloaded from the Web pages of S! Appli providers. Some applications connect to the network to obtain information in real time and some applications can be activated as wallpaper.
FeliCa	Contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. It allows data to be exchanged by simply holding an IC card up to a reader device. The 912T handset is capable of managing multiple types of data, so it can be used for such things as e-money and a membership card.
HSDPA	Short for High-Speed Downlink Packet Access, HSDPA is a 3G mobile telephone communication protocol that provides faster W-CDMA data communication speeds.

Index

User Action Index

A

B

C

D

E

Alphabetical Index

C

D

E

Index

Q

R

S

V

W

Y

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with the handset. Carefully read the card and check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled in correctly. Then, store it in a safe place.

Note

- SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for damages to you or third parties as a result of a failure, malfunction or faulty operation of the product.

After Sales Service

Be sure to refer to "Troubleshooting" (page 22-11) before submitting your handset for repair. If you are still having problems with your handset, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

● **Repair within warranty period**

Repair is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.

● **Repair after warranty period**

Repair is carried out if possible and the handset owner is responsible for any repair costs.

* During repair, parts may be replaced with used parts that meet our quality standards.

Note

- Data and settings may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of your handset. It is, therefore, recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data such as Phone Book data. SoftBank and Toshiba assume no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data (contents of Phone Book, Data Folder, etc.) and settings as a result of failure or repair of your handset.
- Disassembling or modifying the handset is in violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

- If you have any inquiries with regards to the after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank Shop or contact SoftBank General Information (page 22-38).

Customer Service

If you have any questions about a SoftBank handset or service, please call General Information. For service or handset repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Centers
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Global Call Center
From outside Japan, dial
+81-3-5351-3491 (Please take care to dial the correct number. International charges will apply to this call.)

Call These Numbers Toll Free from Fixed-Line Phones

Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	Free Call 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	Free Call 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	Free Call 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	Free Call 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	Free Call 0088-250-113

SoftBank 912T Instruction Manual

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

* For additional information, please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 912T

Manufacturer: **TOSHIBA CORPORATION**

モバイル・リサイクル・ネットワーク
携帯電話・PHSのリサイクルにご協力を。

Please help the mobile industry maintain high environmental standards. Recycle your old handsets, batteries and charger units (all manufacturers and brands).

* Handsets, batteries and chargers submitted for recycling cannot be returned.
* Always erase all data recorded on old handsets (Phone Book entries, call records, mail, etc.) before recycling.